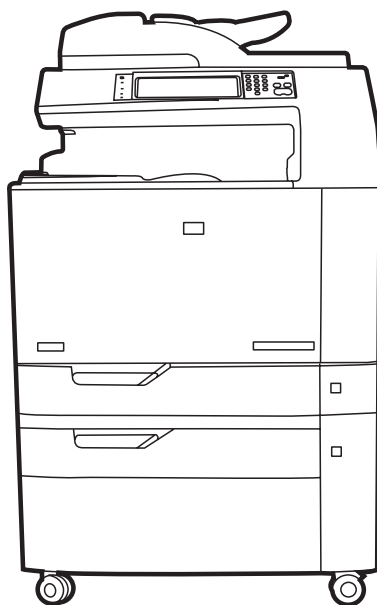


HP Color LaserJet CM6030/CM6040 MFP Series

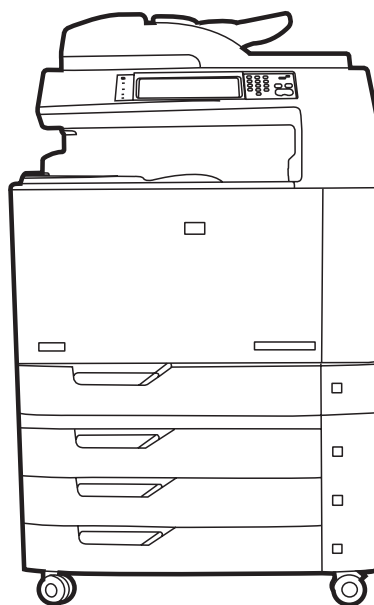
Software Technical Reference



**CM6030 MFP
CM6040 MFP**



**CM6030f MFP
CM6040f MFP**



HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series MFP Series Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 4/2008

Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Acrobat® and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Windows Vista™ is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PANTONE® is Pantone, Inc's check-standard trademark for color.

UNIX® is a registered of The Open Group.

ENERGY STAR® and the ENERGY STAR logo® are U.S. registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction	2
Product comparison	3
Product features	5
Quick Reference Job Aids	8
Product walkaround	9
Front view	9
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series	9
Back view	10
Interface ports	11
Serial number and model number location	11
Printing-system software	13
Operating-system support	13
Supported operating systems for Windows	14
Supported printer drivers for Windows	14
HP Universal Print Driver (UPD)	14
UPD installation modes	15
Supported utilities for Windows	15
Supported utilities for Windows	15
Embedded Web server	15
HP Easy Printer Care	15
Supported operating systems for Macintosh	16
Supported printer drivers for Macintosh	16
Software for Macintosh computers	16
HP Printer Utility	16
Open the HP Printer Utility	17
HP Printer Utility features	17
Supported utilities for Macintosh	18
Embedded Web server	18
Software for other operating systems	18
Printer driver support in other operating systems	18
Availability	19
Printing-system software on the Web	20
In-box printing-system software CDs	20

Admin CD	20
User CD	21
1 Worldwide Version	21
Documentation availability and localization	27
Admin CD	27
Main browser screen	28
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Printing- system Install Notes	28
Administrator Documentation screen	29
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide	30
HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide	30
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	31
User CD	31
Main browser screen	32
Control Panel Wall Poster (.PDF Poster)	32
User Guides	33
User Guide	33
Fax Guides	35
HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Fax Guide	35
HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide	36

2 Software description

Windows printing-system software	38
Supported operating systems for Windows	38
Windows system requirements	38
Macintosh system requirements	39
Printer driver	39
Select the correct printer driver for Windows	39
Priority for print settings	40
Change printer-driver settings for Windows	41
Printing system and installer	41
Printing-system software CD for Windows systems	41
Installer features	45
Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems	46
Windows printer-driver configuration	48
Printer-driver autoconfiguration	48
Bidirectional communication	48
Enterprise AutoConfiguration	49
Update Now	49
HP Web Jetadmin	50
Configurable settings	51
Continuous export	53
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool	54

Advanced color use	55
Restrict color use	55
Restrict color printing and copying from the control panel	55
International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles	55
PANTONE color profiles [INTERNAL]	55
Embedded Web server	57
HP Web Jetadmin	58
Scan Setup Wizard	59
MFP Send Fax Driver	60
Font support	61
Basic Windows fonts	61
Default printing-system fonts	61
3 Install Windows printing-system components	
Supported operating systems for Windows	68
Windows operating system requirements	68
Install overview	68
Software installation types for Windows	68
Installation options	69
Microsoft Windows general installation overview	70
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems	70
Install	71
Install Notes	72
Support	72
Administrator Software	73
Administrator Documentation	74
Scan Setup Wizard	75
Next Steps	76
Install Windows software for direct connections	78
Install Windows software for networks	79
Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions	80
Install the printer driver using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)	80
Install the printer driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard	89
Use an existing port for a direct connection	89
Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection	96
Print sever connection	99
Microsoft Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking)	103
Setting up the host computer running Windows 2000	104
Setting up the host computer running Windows XP	104
Setting up client computers running Windows 2000	104
Setting up client computers running Windows XP	105
Microsoft Point and Print	105
Use the MFP Send Fax Driver	106

Download the HP Send Fax	106
Install the HP Send Fax Driver	107
HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)	107
Add Printer Wizard	111
Send a fax using the HP Send Fax Driver	117
Create a network folder using the Scan Setup Wizard	118
Install documentation and optional software	128
Uninstall software	130
Uninstall component list	130
Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using Windows Add or Remove Programs feature	131
Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature	135
Uninstall documentation and optional software	136

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction	137
Access print drivers	139
Printing Preferences driver tabs	139
Properties driver tabs	140
Help system	141
“What's this?” Help	141
Incompatible Print Settings messages	141
Advanced tab features	143
Paper/Output	143
Copy Count	144
Graphic	144
Image Color Management	144
TrueType Font	145
Document Options	145
Advanced Printing Features	145
Print Optimizations	145
Printer Features	146
Layout Options	146
Printing Shortcuts tab features	147
Use defined printing shortcuts	148
General Everyday Printing	148
Paper source	148
Paper sizes	149
Paper type	149
Orientation	150
Print on both sides	150
Pages per sheet	150
Staple	151

Two-sided (Duplex) Printing	151
Booklet Printing	151
Envelopes	152
Factory Defaults	152
Create a custom printing shortcut	152
Paper/Quality tab features	154
Paper Options	155
Paper sizes	155
Custom Paper Size	156
Name	156
Paper size	157
Units	157
Custom width and height control limits	157
Paper source	158
Paper type	158
Special pages	159
Covers	160
Print pages on different paper	160
Document preview image	161
Print Quality	162
Print Quality drop-down menu	162
Effects tab features	163
Resizing Options	163
Actual Size	164
Print Document On	164
Scale to Fit	164
% of Actual Size	164
Document preview image	165
Watermarks	165
Current watermarks	166
Watermark Message	167
Message Angle	167
Font Attributes	167
Default watermark settings	169
Finishing tab features	170
Document Options	170
Print on both sides	171
Print on both sides (automatically)	171
Print on both sides (manually)	172
Flip pages up	173
Booklet layout	173
Book and Booklet Printing	174
Pages per sheet	174
Print page borders	175

Page order	175
Job Separator	176
Document preview image	176
Orientation	176
Output tab features	177
Output Options	177
Document preview image	178
Output Bin options	178
Job Storage tab features	179
Status group box	180
Job Storage Mode	181
Off	181
Proof and Hold	181
Personal Job	181
Quick Copy	182
Stored Job	182
PIN to print	183
Job Notification Options	183
User Name	183
Job Name	184
Use job-storage features when printing	184
Release a job-storage print job	185
Delete a job-storage print job	185
Color tab features	186
Color Options	187
Automatic	187
Manual	187
General	189
Neutral Grays	189
Halftone	189
Color Themes	190
Default (sRGB)	190
Photo (sRGB)	190
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)	190
None	190
Custom Profile	190
Document preview image	191
Services tab features	191
Internet Services	192
Device services	193
Device Settings tab features	194
Form to Tray Assignment	194
Font Substitution Table	195
External Fonts	196

Installing external fonts	197
Removing external fonts	198
Installable Options	198
Automatic Configuration	199
Tray 3	199
Tray 4	199
Tray 5	199
Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)	199
Allow Manual Duplexing	199
Accessory Output Bin	200
Printer Memory	200
Printer Hard Disk	200
Job Storage	200
Job Separator	200
Mopier Mode	200
Mopier mode and collation	201
About tab features	201

5 Macintosh software and utilities

Supported operating systems for Macintosh	204
Macintosh system requirements	205
Macintosh printing-system software	206
Supported printer drivers for Macintosh	206
Priority for print settings for Macintosh	206
Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh	207
Software for Macintosh computers	208
HP Printer Utility	208
Open the HP Printer Utility	208
HP Printer Utility features	208
Embedded Web server	209
Availability	209
Printing-system software on the Web	209
In-box printing-system software CDs	210
Macintosh partition	210
CD versions	210
Macintosh install and uninstall instructions	212
Install the Macintosh printing-system software	212
General installation for Macintosh operating systems	212
Detailed Mac OS X installation	213
Product setup	220
Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.4	220
Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.3	225
Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.2.8	229

Troubleshooting the product setup	231
Remove software from Macintosh operating systems	232
Macintosh HP Printer Utility	233
Access to the HP Printer Utility	233
Supplies Status	237
Device Information	240
HP Support	241
File Upload	243
Update Firmware	245
Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility	245
Duplex mode	246
Trays Configuration	247
Lock Resources	248
Stored Jobs	249
Releasing a job-storage print job	249
Deleting a job-storage print job	250
E-mail Alerts	250
Network Settings	251
Bonjour Settings	252
Additional Network Settings	254
Use features in the Macintosh printer driver	254
Create and use printing presets in Macintosh	254
Resize documents or print on a custom paper size	255
Print a cover page	255
Use watermarks	255
Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh	255
Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)	256
Set the stapling options	257
Store jobs	257
Set the color options	257
Use the Services menu	258

6 Engineering details

Remote firmware updates	260
Print the configuration page	261
Print the menu map	262
HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility	262
Other remote firmware update methods	264
Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser	265
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection	265
Remote firmware update through a Windows network	267
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems	267
Remote firmware update by using the LPR command	268

Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin	268
Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server	269
Messages during the firmware update	269
Print print-ready documents	272
Print a print-ready file by using FTP through a browser	272
Print a print-ready file by using FTP on a network connection	273
Print-ready file printing in a Windows network	274
Print a print-ready file in UNIX systems	274
Print a print-ready file by using the LPR command	274
Print a print-ready file through the HP Embedded Web Server	275
Media attributes	276
Media sources and destinations	276
Media-source commands	276
Printer driver supported media sizes	277
Printer driver supported media types	279
Custom paper sizes	280
Media-type commands	281
Paper and print media	282
Understand paper and print media use	282
Supported paper and print media sizes	282
Supported paper and print media types	287
Special paper or print media guidelines	288
HP Device Manager for Linux	290
Glossary	293
Index	297

List of tables

Table 1-1	Product models	3
Table 1-2	Features	5
Table 1-3	Software component availability	19
Table 1-4	Supported printing-system components (AR – FR)	22
Table 1-5	Supported printing-system components (HE – NO)	23
Table 1-6	Supported printing-system components (PL – ZHTW)	25
Table 2-1	Availability of automatic discovery and printer- driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows	48
Table 2-2	Default fonts	61
Table 2-3	Additional PS emulation fonts	63
Table 4-1	PCL 6 custom paper sizes	157
Table 4-2	Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks	169
Table 4-3	Page orientation	173
Table 4-4	Driver mopier mode and collation settings	201
Table 5-1	Titles	208
Table 5-2	Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems	212
Table 6-1	Version Checking [INTERNAL]	260
Table 6-2	Troubleshooting a firmware update	270
Table 6-3	Update messages	270
Table 6-4	Troubleshooting a firmware update failure	271
Table 6-5	Media sources and destinations	276
Table 6-6	Media-source commands	277
Table 6-7	Supported media sizes and attributes	277
Table 6-8	Supported input media types	279
Table 6-9	PCL 6 custom media sizes	280
Table 6-10	Media-type commands	281
Table 6-11	Supported paper and print media sizes	282
Table 6-12	Supported envelopes and postcards	284
Table 6-13	Supported paper and print media sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories	285
Table 6-14	Tray 1 paper information	287
Table 6-15	Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information	287

List of figures

Figure 1-1	Admin CD — main browser screen	28
Figure 1-2	Administrator Documentation screen	29
Figure 1-3	User CD — main browser screen	32
Figure 1-4	User Guides screen	33
Figure 1-5	Fax Guides screen	35
Figure 2-1	Installation software CD Browser (Admin CD)	42
Figure 2-2	Online Support screen	43
Figure 2-3	Optional Software screen	44
Figure 2-4	Administrator Documentation screen	45
Figure 2-5	Scan Setup Wizard — Complete screen	59
Figure 3-1	CD Browser — Main screen	70
Figure 3-2	CD Browser — Install screen	72
Figure 3-3	CD Browser — Support screen	73
Figure 3-4	CD Browser — Administrator Software screen	74
Figure 3-5	CD Browser — Administrator Documentation screen	75
Figure 3-6	CD Browser — Scan Setup Wizard screen	76
Figure 3-7	CD Browser — Next Steps screen	77
Figure 3-8	Software Installation — Initial screen	81
Figure 3-9	Software Installation — Please choose a driver to install screen	82
Figure 3-10	Software Installation — License Agreement screen	83
Figure 3-11	Software Installation — Device Connection screen	84
Figure 3-12	Software Installation — Devices Found screen	85
Figure 3-13	Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2	86
Figure 3-14	Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1	87
Figure 3-15	Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2	88
Figure 3-16	Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen	90
Figure 3-17	Add Printer Wizard — Select a Printer Port screen	91
Figure 3-18	Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software screen	92
Figure 3-19	Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen	92
Figure 3-20	Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software, screen 2	93
Figure 3-21	Add Printer Wizard — Name Your Printer screen	94
Figure 3-22	Add Printer Wizard — Printer Sharing screen	95
Figure 3-23	Add Printer Wizard — Print Test Page screen	96
Figure 3-24	Local or Network Printer screen	97

Figure 3-25	Select a Printer Port screen	98
Figure 3-26	Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port screen	98
Figure 3-27	Add Port screen	99
Figure 3-28	Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen	100
Figure 3-29	Add Printer Wizard — Specify A Printer screen	101
Figure 3-30	Add Printer Wizard — Find Printers screen	102
Figure 3-31	Add Printer Wizard — Default Printer screen	102
Figure 3-32	Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen	103
Figure 3-33	Send Fax Driver Installation — License Agreement screen	107
Figure 3-34	Send Fax Driver Installation — Device Connection screen	108
Figure 3-35	Send Fax Driver Installation — Devices Found screen	109
Figure 3-36	Send Fax Driver Installation — Device Connection screen 2	110
Figure 3-37	Send Fax Driver Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen	111
Figure 3-38	Send Fax Driver Installation — Local or Network Printer screen	112
Figure 3-39	Send Fax Driver Installation — Use the following port screen	113
Figure 3-40	Send Fax Driver Installation — Install Printer Software screen	114
Figure 3-41	Send Fax Driver Installation — Install From Disk screen	114
Figure 3-42	Send Fax Driver Installation — Name Your Printer screen	115
Figure 3-43	Send Fax Driver Installation — Printer Sharing screen	116
Figure 3-44	Send Fax Driver Installation — Print Test Page screen	117
Figure 3-45	Scan Setup Wizard — Welcome screen	119
Figure 3-46	Scan Setup Wizard — Devices Found screen	120
Figure 3-47	Scan Setup Wizard — Network Settings screen	121
Figure 3-48	Scan Setup Wizard — Contacting Device screen	122
Figure 3-49	Scan Setup Wizard — Add or Remove Folders screen	123
Figure 3-50	Scan Setup Wizard — Authentication screen	124
Figure 3-51	Scan Setup Wizard — Folder Settings screen	125
Figure 3-52	Scan Setup Wizard — Folder Name screen	126
Figure 3-53	Scan Setup Wizard — Complete screen	127
Figure 3-54	Install or Uninstall Software	129
Figure 3-55	Windows Control Panel screen	131
Figure 3-56	Windows Change or Remove Programs screen	132
Figure 3-57	HP Driver Uninstall Utility screen	133
Figure 3-58	Uninstall selected device screen	134
Figure 3-59	Uninstall all devices screen	134
Figure 3-60	Uninstall progress window	134
Figure 3-61	Uninstall optional software screen	134
Figure 4-1	An Incompatible Print Settings message	141
Figure 4-2	The default appearance of the Advanced tab	143
Figure 4-3	Printing Shortcuts tab	147
Figure 4-4	Printing Shortcuts dialog box	153
Figure 4-5	Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut	153
Figure 4-6	Paper/Quality tab	154
Figure 4-7	Paper Options group box	155

Figure 4-8	Custom Paper Size dialog box	156
Figure 4-9	Print pages on different paper - First or Last	161
Figure 4-10	Effects tab	163
Figure 4-11	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	164
Figure 4-12	Watermark Details dialog box	166
Figure 4-13	Finishing tab	170
Figure 4-14	Page-order preview images	175
Figure 4-15	Output tab	177
Figure 4-16	Job Storage tab	180
Figure 4-17	Job Storage Identification dialog box	183
Figure 4-18	Color tab	186
Figure 4-19	Color Settings dialog box	188
Figure 4-20	Services tab	192
Figure 4-21	Device Settings tab	194
Figure 4-22	Font Substitution Table	196
Figure 4-23	HP Font Installer dialog box	197
Figure 4-24	About tab	202
Figure 5-1	Product CD image	213
Figure 5-2	HP LaserJet installer browser screen	214
Figure 5-3	Introduction dialog box	215
Figure 5-4	Read Me dialog box	215
Figure 5-5	License dialog box	216
Figure 5-6	Agree/Disagree dialog box	216
Figure 5-7	Select Destination dialog box	217
Figure 5-8	Installation Type dialog box	217
Figure 5-9	Custom Install dialog box	218
Figure 5-10	Authenticate dialog box	218
Figure 5-11	Installing dialog box	219
Figure 5-12	Finish Up dialog box	219
Figure 5-13	Printer list screen	221
Figure 5-14	Print & Fax dialog	221
Figure 5-15	Default Browser tab	222
Figure 5-16	Printer Browser – IP Printer tab	223
Figure 5-17	Installable Options screen	224
Figure 5-18	Printer List screen	225
Figure 5-19	Print & Fax screen	226
Figure 5-20	Add printer screen	227
Figure 5-21	Add printer screen	229
Figure 5-22	Printer Selector screen	234
Figure 5-23	Connection Type screen	235
Figure 5-24	Select Printer screen – printer selected	235
Figure 5-25	Printer Utility screen	236
Figure 5-26	Printer Status screen	236
Figure 5-27	Current Supplies Levels screen	237

Figure 5-28	Supplies Status screen	237
Figure 5-29	Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen	238
Figure 5-30	Welcome to HP SureSupply screen	239
Figure 5-31	Paper Status screen	239
Figure 5-32	Device Information screen	240
Figure 5-33	HP Online Support screen	241
Figure 5-34	HP Instant Support link	242
Figure 5-35	HP Registration Web page	243
Figure 5-36	File Upload screen	244
Figure 5-37	Update Firmware screen	245
Figure 5-38	Duplex Mode screen	246
Figure 5-39	Trays Configuration screen	247
Figure 5-40	Lock Resources screen	248
Figure 5-41	Enable Job Storing screen	249
Figure 5-42	E-mail Alerts screen	251
Figure 5-43	Network Settings screen	251
Figure 5-44	Bonjour Settings screen	253
Figure 5-45	Additional Network Settings screen	254
Figure 6-1	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1	263
Figure 6-2	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2	263
Figure 6-3	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen	264
Figure 6-4	HP Device Manager – Functions tab	290
Figure 6-5	HP Device Manager – Status tab	291
Figure 6-6	HP Device Manager – Supplies tab	291
Figure 6-7	HP Device Manager – Panel tab	292

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the printing-system software for the product.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and end users, as appropriate.



NOTE: This STR describes drivers that are shipped on the printing-system software CD that comes with the product. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The following information is included in this STR:

- Descriptions of drivers, operating systems, and system environments
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling the printing-system software components

For information about the location of information within chapters, see the table of contents. An index is also provided in this STR.

Additional detailed information about the printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available in the addendum:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as files added or modified

Product comparison

Table 1-1 Product models

Model	Features
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP 	• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 30 pages per minute (ppm) • Two 500-sheet input trays • Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Duplexer • Hard drive
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 f MFP 	• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 30 ppm • Four 500-sheet input trays • Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Duplexer • Hard drive
HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP 	• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 40 ppm • Two 500-sheet input trays • Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Duplexer • Hard drive
HP Color LaserJet CM6040f MFP 	• 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 40 ppm • Four 500-sheet input trays • Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Duplexer

Table 1-1 Product models (continued)

Model	Features
	• Hard drive • Analog fax

Product features

Table 1-2 Features

Speed and throughput	- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP prints up to 30 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper and 31 ppm on A4-size paper; HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP prints up to 40 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper and 41 ppm on A4-size paper. - Up to 12 seconds to print the first page - Recommended maximum monthly print volume of pages for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP printer: 5,000 - 15,000 - Recommended maximum monthly print volume of pages for the HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP printer: 8,000 - 15,000 - An 833 megahertz (MHz) microprocessor - Duplex at speed
Resolution	600 dots per inch (dpi) with Image Resolution Enhancement technology 4800 for optimum overall imaging 1200 x 600 dpi for detailed line work and small text
Memory	512 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by using 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (SODIMM) that support 128, 256, or 512 MB of RAM. - Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) automatically compresses data to use RAM more efficiently.
User interface	- HP Easy Select Control Panel - An embedded Web server to gain access to support and order supplies (for network-connected products) - HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool) - Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through HP Easy Printer Care software and embedded Web server
Languages and fonts	- HP Printer Control Language (PCL) 6 - HP Universal Printer Driver (UPD) PCL 5 - Universal Printer Driver (UPD) postscript (PS) - Printer Management Language 80 scalable TrueType PS typefaces
Paper handling	Input Tray 1 (multipurpose tray): A multipurpose tray for paper, transparencies, labels, envelopes, and other paper types. The tray holds up to 100 sheets of paper, 50 transparencies, or 10 envelopes. Tray 2, 3, 4, and 5: 500-sheet trays. These trays automatically detect common paper sizes and allow printing on custom-size paper. Tray 2 supports up to 279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 inches) and A3 paper sizes, and Trays 3, 4, and 5 support sizes up to 305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 inches) and SRA3. Automatic document feeder (ADF): Holds up to 50 sheets of paper.

Table 1-2 Features (continued)

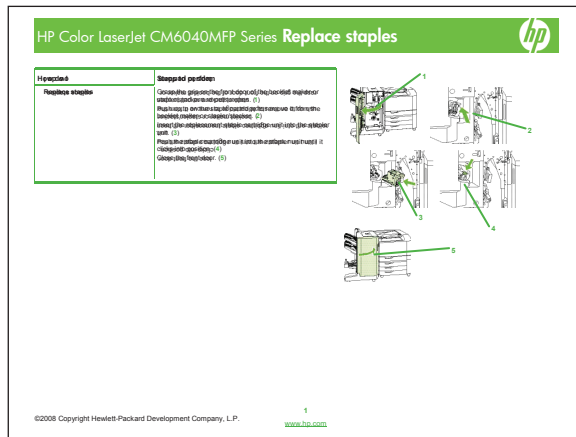
	◦ ADF duplex scanning: The ADF has an automatic duplexer for scanning two-sided documents. ◦ Duplex printing: Provides automatic two-sided printing (printing on both sides of the paper). The paper size range for automatic duplex printing is 175 mm to 320 mm (7.2 to 12.6 inches) x 210 mm to 457 mm (8.3 to 18 inches). The media weight range is 60–220 g/m2 (16 - 58 lb).
	● Output ◦ Standard output bin: The standard output bin is located underneath the scanner on the top of the product. This bin can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. The product provides a sensor that indicates when the bin is full. ◦ Optional 3-bin stapler/stacker: Provides job separation in multiple output bins, convenient stapling (up to 50-sheet jobs), job offset capability, and additional output capacity. The stacker has three bins: a 100-sheet bin, a 500-sheet bin, and a 1000-sheet bin. ◦ Optional booklet maker finisher: Provides convenient stapling (up to 50-sheet jobs), saddle stitching (up to 15-sheet booklets), single-sheet v-folding, job separation, and offset capability, as well as additional output capacity. The booklet maker finisher has three bins: two 1000-sheet bins and one bin that can hold up to 25 saddle-stitched booklets. ◦ ADF output bin: The ADF output bin is underneath the ADF input tray. The bin holds up to 50 sheets of paper, and the product automatically stops when this bin is full.
Supported operating systems	● Windows 2000® ● Windows Server 2003® ● Windows XP® ● Windows Vista™ ● Macintosh OS
Connectivity	● Local area network (LAN) connector (RJ-45) for the embedded HP Jetdirect print server ● One enhanced input/output (EIO) slot ● USB 2.0 connection ● Optional analog fax card ● A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) connection (AUX) for connecting other devices ● Optional HP Digital Sending Software (DSS)
Environmental features	● Sleep setting saves energy. ● High content of recyclable components and materials.

Table 1-2 Features (continued)

Security features	• Secure Disk Erase • Security lock (optional) • Job retention • User PIN authentication for stored jobs • DSS authentication • IPv6 security
Copying and sending	• Modes for text, graphics, and mixed text and graphics formats • Job-interrupt feature • Multiple pages per sheet • Control panel animations (for example, jam recovery) • Scan and send to e-mail ◦ Local address book for e-mail and fax ◦ LDAP addressing • Send to folder • Automatic duplex (two-sided) scanning

Quick Reference Job Aids

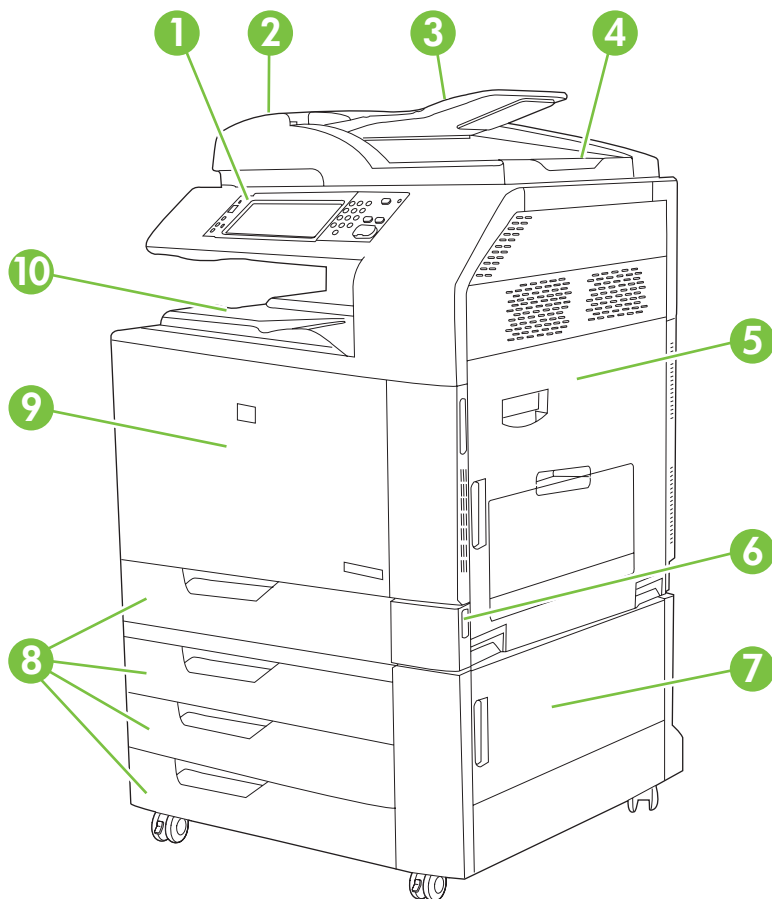
Quick Reference Job Aids provide additional step-by-step procedures for using this product. Access the Quick Reference Job Aids from the user CD, www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp, or at www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp.



Product walkaround

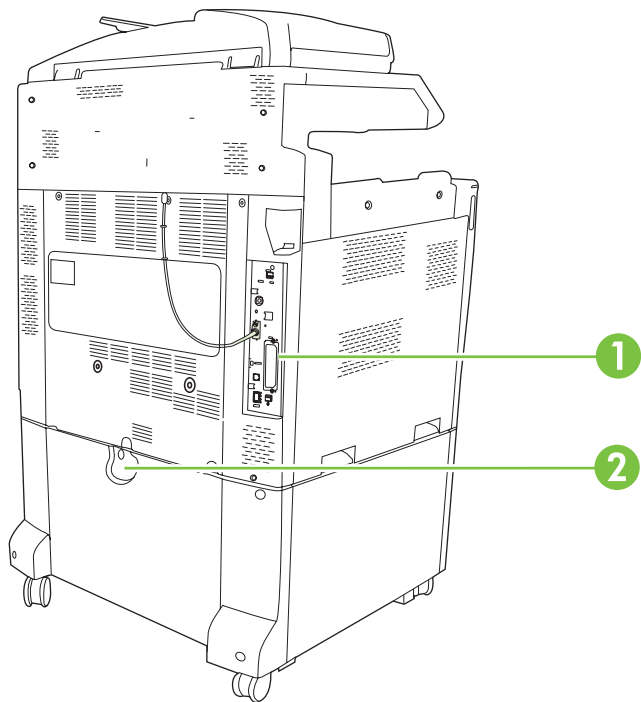
Front view

HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series



1	Control panel
2	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) top cover
3	ADF input tray for copy/scan/fax originals
4	ADF output bin
5	Right door (provides access to the transfer unit, transfer roller, and fuser unit)
6	On/Off switch
7	Lower right door
8	HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP and HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP: Trays 2 and 3 HP Color LaserJet CM6030 f MFP and HP Color LaserJet CM6040f MFP: Trays 2, 3, 4 and 5
9	Front cover (provides access to print cartridges and image drums)
10	Output bin

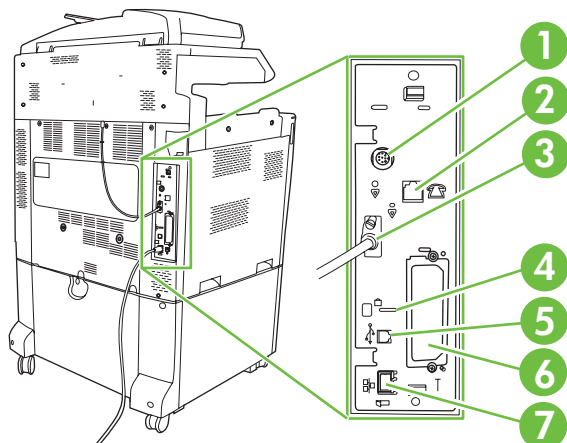
Back view



1	Interface ports and formatter
2	Lock lever for additional input bins

Interface ports

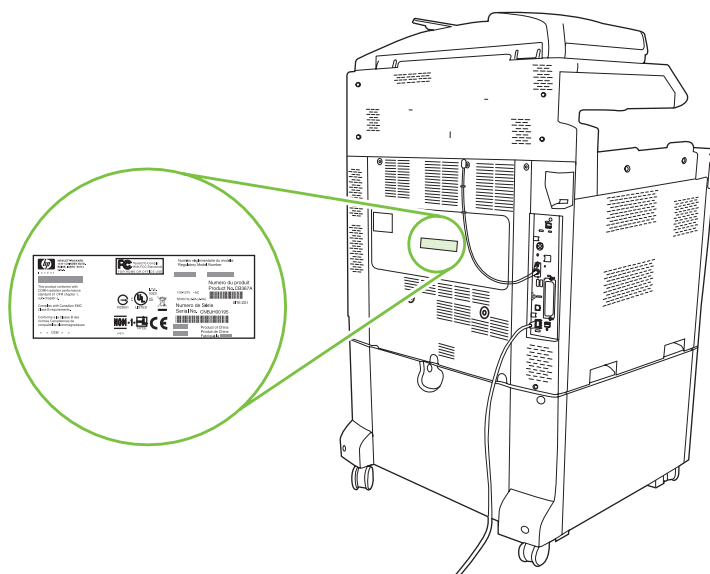
The product has five ports for connecting to a computer or a network. The ports are at the left, rear corner of the product.



1	Foreign interface harness (FIH)
2	Fax connection (when installed)
3	Scanner cable
4	Access port for Kensington lock
5	USB 2.0 port
6	EIO expansion slot
7	Network port

Serial number and model number location

The model number and serial number are listed on identification labels located on the rear of the printer. The serial number contains information about the country/region of origin, the printer version, production code, and the production number of the printer.



Model name	Model number
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP	CE664A
HP Color LaserJet CM6030f MFP	CE665A
HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP	Q3938A
HP Color LaserJet CM6040f MFP	Q3939A

Printing-system software

- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

Operating-system support

Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the product. Operating systems that are not described in this STR provide varying levels of functionality.

Throughout this document, Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition and Windows XP Professional, unless noted otherwise.

Information relating to networking functions is specific to products that have network capabilities.

Information relating to faxing functions is specific to products that have fax capabilities.

The printing-system software has *not* been tested with and is *not* supported in the following operating systems:

- Windows 3.1x
- Windows 95
- Windows 98
- Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- Windows NT® 4.0
- IA-64-bit operating systems

Printer drivers for these operating systems are not included on the printing-system software CD and are not available on the Web. Other printer drivers might work with the product, but some print-driver features and functions might not be available.

For more information about the product, go to the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Supported printer drivers for Windows](#)
- [HP Universal Print Driver \(UPD\)](#)
- [Supported utilities for Windows](#)
- [Supported operating systems for Macintosh](#)
- [Supported printer drivers for Macintosh](#)
- [Software for Macintosh computers](#)
- [Open the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [HP Printer Utility features](#)
- [Supported utilities for Macintosh](#)

- [Software for other operating systems](#)
- [Printer driver support in other operating systems](#)

Supported operating systems for Windows

The product supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)

Supported printer drivers for Windows

- HP PCL 6
- HP postscript emulation Universal Print Driver (HP UPD PS)
- HP PCL 5 UPD Universal Print Driver (HP UPD PCL 5)

The printer drivers include online Help that has instructions for common printing tasks and also describes the buttons, checkboxes, and drop-down lists that are in the printer driver.



NOTE: The HP PCL 6 is the only printer-driver that is included with this product; it is included in the box on the Admin CD.

NOTE: For more information about the UPD, see www.hp.com/go/upd.

HP Universal Print Driver (UPD)

The HP Universal Print Driver (UPD) for Windows is a single driver that gives you instant access to virtually any HP LaserJet product, from any location, without downloading separate drivers. It is built on proven HP print driver technology and has been tested thoroughly and used with many software programs. It is a powerful solution that performs consistently over time.

The HP UPD communicates directly with each HP product, gathers configuration information, and then customizes the user interface to show the product's unique, available features. It automatically enables features that are available for the product, such as two-sided printing and stapling, so you do not need to enable them manually.

For more information, go to www.hp.com/go/upd.

UPD installation modes

Traditional mode	• Use this mode if you are installing the driver from a CD for a single computer. • When installed with this mode, UPD operates like traditional printer drivers. • If you use this mode, you must install UPD separately for each printer.
Dynamic mode	• Use this mode if you are installing the driver for a mobile computer, so you can discover and print to HP products in any location. • Use this mode if you are installing UPD for a workgroup. • To use this mode, download UPD from the Internet. See www.hp.com/go/upd.

Supported utilities for Windows

Supported utilities for Windows

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool for HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet, and it should be installed only on the network administrator's computer.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, visit www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin.

When installed on a host server, a Windows client can gain access to HP Web Jetadmin by using a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.x or Netscape Navigator 4.x or later) by navigating to the HP Web Jetadmin host.

Embedded Web server

The product is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about product and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, Apple Safari, or Firefox.

The embedded Web server resides on the product. It is not loaded on a network server.

The embedded Web server provides an interface to the product that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on the computer. To gain access to the embedded Web server, type the IP address for the product in the address line of the browser.

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Admin CD.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care software is a program that you can use for the following tasks:

- Check the product status
- Check the supplies status and use HP SureSupply to shop online for supplies
- Set up alerts

- View product usage reports
- View product documentation
- Gain access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools
- Use HP Proactive Support to routinely scan your printing system and to prevent potential problems. HP Proactive Support can update software, firmware, and HP printer drivers.

You can view HP Easy Printer Care software when the product is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network.

Supported operating systems	● Microsoft® Windows 2000 ● Microsoft Windows Server 2003 ● Microsoft Windows XP, Service Pack 2 ● Microsoft Windows Vista™
Supported browsers	● Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or 7.0

To download HP Easy Printer Care software, go to www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare. This Web site also provides updated information about supported browsers and a list of HP products that support HP Easy Printer Care software.

For more information about using HP Easy Printer Care software, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides*, which are available on the User CD.

Supported operating systems for Macintosh

The product supports the following Macintosh operating systems:

- Mac OS X V10.2.8, V10.3, V10.4, V10.5, and later

 **NOTE:** For Mac OS X V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel Core Processor Macs are supported.

Supported printer drivers for Macintosh

The HP installer provides PostScript® Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple PostScript printer drivers, provide access to device features. Use the Apple PostScript printer driver that comes with the computer.

Software for Macintosh computers

HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to set up product features that are not available in the printer driver.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when the product uses a universal serial bus (USB) cable or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network.

Open the HP Printer Utility

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.2.8

1. Open the Finder, and then click **Applications**.
2. Click **Library**, and then click **Printers**.
3. Click **HP**, and then click **Utilities**.
4. Double-click **HP Printer Selector** to open the HP Printer Selector.
5. Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.3 and V10.4

1. Open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.
2. Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.5

From the **Printer** menu, click **Printer Utility**.

-or-

From the **Print Queue**, click the **Utility** icon.

HP Printer Utility features

The HP Printer Utility consists of pages that you open by clicking in the **Configuration Settings** list. The following table describes the tasks that you can perform from these pages.

Item	Description
Configuration Page	Prints a configuration page.
Supplies Status	Shows the device supplies status and provides links for online supplies ordering.
HP Support	Provides access to technical assistance, online supplies ordering, online registration, and recycling and return information.
File Upload	Transfers files from the computer to the device.
Upload Fonts	Transfers font files from the computer to the device.
Firmware Update	Transfers updated firmware files from the computer to the device.
Duplex Mode	Turns on the automatic two-sided printing mode.
Economode & Toner Density	Turns on the Economode setting to conserve toner, or adjusts toner density.
Resolution	Changes the resolution settings, including the REt setting.
Lock Resources	Locks or unlocks storage products, such as a hard disk.
Stored Jobs	Manages print jobs that are stored on the device hard disk.
Trays Configuration	Changes the default tray settings.
IP Settings	Changes the device network settings and provides access to the embedded Web server.
Bonjour Settings	Provides the ability to turn on or off Bonjour support or change the device service name that is listed on a network.

Item	Description
Additional Settings	Provides access to the embedded Web server.
E-mail Alerts	Configures the device to send e-mail notices for certain events.

Supported utilities for Macintosh

Embedded Web server

The product is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about product and network activities. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Administrator (hereafter “Admin”) CD.

Software for other operating systems

Operating System	Software
UNIX	For HP-UX and Solaris networks, go to www.hp.com/support/go/jetdirectunix_software to install model scripts using the HP Jetdirect printer installer (HPPI) for UNIX. For the latest model scripts, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts .
Linux	For information, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting .

Printer driver support in other operating systems

The product is also supported in the following operating systems:

- MS Windows Terminal Server
- Citrix Terminal Server. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/citrixprinting

Alternatively, go to the HP.com Web site and search for “c00213455.”
- MS Windows Cluster Server 8
www.hp.com/go/windowsclusterserver
- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/openvmsprinting
- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/tru64unixprinting
- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/sap/print
- Jet Direct Printer Server and HP Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW). Available *only* from the following Web site:

Availability

Download the printing-system software from the Web, or order it on a CD from HP fulfillment centers.



NOTE: This STR describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released by support personnel.

The following table lists the availability of printing-system software components by operating system.

Table 1-3 Software component availability

Component	Windows	Macintosh
Admin CD		
Browser	x	
Installer (HP-DIU)	x	
Installer (Mac)		x
PCL6 Driver	x	
PCL5 Driver	Web	
PS Driver	Web	Web
Fonts	x	x
Send Fax Driver	x	
Scan Setup Wizard	x	
Scan Setup Wizard Guide	x	
Scan Setup Wizard Readme	x	
Animated GSG (eGSG)	x	
Install Notes	x	x
Customization Wizard (HP-DIU or HP-DDU)	x	
Embedded Web Server guide	x	x
JetDirect guide	x	x
Preconfig guide	x	
Support links	x	
Registration link	x	
User CD		
User Guide – interactive	x	
User Guide – PDF	x	x
Fax Guide	x	
Send Fax Guide	x	
Job Aids	x	
Product demos and simulations (training)	x	

Table 1-3 Software component availability (continued)

Component	Windows	Macintosh
CD wall poster	x	x
Support links	x	

 **NOTE:** Fonts are installed on the Mac by using the HP Printer Utility.

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CDs is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases. See the HP Proactive support link on the Download Drivers and Software page.

The printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp

In-box printing-system software CDs

Two CDs are included in-box with the product.

- **Admin CD.** Contains the printing-system installer and administrator software, administrator documentation, the Animated Getting Started Guide, the Installer Customization Wizard, and links to the HP Universal Print Drivers (UPDs) on the Web.
- **User CD.** Contains user guides, job aids, product demonstrations and simulations, the control panel wall poster, fax guides, and support information.

Each CD has two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- Windows
- Macintosh

The files in each partition of the Admin CD include documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system software components. Use the Admin CD to install the printing-system software.

Admin CD

The root directory in the Windows partition of the Admin CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HPSU

- Manuals
- Port Monitor
- Temp

User CD

The root directory in the Windows partition of the User CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Manuals

To view the files, insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive, right-click **Start**, click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

1 Worldwide Version

The Admin CD is available in a single worldwide version and contains the printing-system software in all supported languages as follows:

- **Admin CD**
 - AR = Arabic
 - BG = Bulgarian
 - CA = Catalan (Català)
 - CS = Czech (Cesky)
 - DA = Danish (Dansk)
 - DE = German (Deutsch)
 - EL = Greek
 - EN = English
 - ES = Spanish (Español)
 - ET = Estonian (Eesti)
 - FI = Finnish (Suomi)
 - FR = French (Français)
 - HE = Hebrew
 - HR = Croatian (Hrvatski)
 - HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
 - ID = Indonesia (Bahasa)
 - IT = Italian (Italiano)
 - JA = Japanese

- KK = Kazakh
- KO = Korean
- LT = Lithuanian
- LV = Latvian
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian
- SR = Serbian
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TH = Thai
- TR = Turkish (Türkçe)
- UK = Ukrainian
- VI = Vietnamese
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

Table 1-4 Supported printing-system components (AR – FR)

Component	AR	BG	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR
HP PCL 6 printer driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Send Fax driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Common Windows Installer (HPDIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Job Aids								x	x			x
Installer Customization Wizard								x				
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fonts								x				
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x

Table 1-4 Supported printing-system components (AR – FR) (continued)

Component	AR	BG	CA	CS	DA	DE	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR
MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes												
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Embedded Web Server User Guides (.PDF)					x	x		x	x		x	x
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide								x				
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Fax (.PDF)	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guides (.PDF)	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x
Install Scan Setup Wizard						x		x	x			x
Scan Setup Wizard UG												
Scan Setup Wizard Readme												
Animated Getting Started Guide												
Product demos and simulations												
CP Wall Poster												
HP Printer Utility (Mac)												

Table 1-5 Supported printing-system components (HE – NO)

Component	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	JA	KK	KO	LT	LV	NL	NO
HP PCL 6 printer driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-5 Supported printing-system components (HE – NO) (continued)

Component	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	JA	KK	KO	LT	LV	NL	NO
HP Send Fax driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x		x			x	x
Common Windows Installer (HPDIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Job Aids					x							
Installer Customization Wizard												
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fonts												
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x		x			x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Embedded Web Server User Guides (.PDF)</i>					x	x		x			x	x
<i>HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide (.PDF and .CHM)</i>			x		x	x		x			x	x
<i>HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide</i>												
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.CHM)</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x	E ¹	x	E ¹	E ¹	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.PDF)</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x	E ¹	x	E ¹	E ¹	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Fax (.PDF)</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x		x			x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guides (.PDF)</i>	x		x		x	x		x			x	x
Install Scan Setup Wizard						x		x	x			x

Table 1-5 Supported printing-system components (HE – NO) (continued)

Component	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	JA	KK	KO	LT	LV	NL	NO
Scan Setup Wizard UG												
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me												
Animated Getting Started Guide												
Product demos and simulations												
CP Wall Poster												
HP Printer Utility (Mac)												

¹ “E” denotes “English version”

Table 1-6 Supported printing-system components (PL – ZHTW)

Component	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL	SR	SV	TH	TR	UK	VI	ZHC N	ZHT W
HP PCL 6 printer driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Send Fax driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x			x	x	x			x	x
Common Windows Installer (HPDIU)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Job Aids														
Installer Customization Wizard														
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Fonts														
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Printing- System Install Notes</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x	x			x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Embedded Web Server User Guides (.PDF)</i>		x						x					x	x
<i>HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide (.PDF)</i>	x	x		x	x			x		x				
<i>HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide</i>														

Table 1-6 Supported printing-system components (PL – ZHTW) (continued)

Component	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL	SR	SV	TH	TR	UK	VI	ZHC N	ZHT W
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.CHM)</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x	E ¹	x	x	x	E ¹	E ¹	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides (.PDF)</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x	E ¹	x	x	x	E ¹	E ¹	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Fax (.PDF)</i>	x	x	x	x	x			x	x	x			x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guides (.PDF)</i>	x	x		x	x			x	x	x			x	x
Install Scan Setup Wizard								x		x	x			x
Scan Setup Wizard UG														
Scan Setup Wizard Read Me														
Animated Getting Started Guide														
Product demos and simulations														
CP Wall Poster														
HP Printer Utility (Mac)														

¹ “E” denotes “English version”

Documentation availability and localization

Both CDs that are included with the product contain documentation.

Access to the documents depends on the document type and location:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents appear on the CD and can *only* be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable document Format (.PDF)** . To view documentation in .PDF format, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:
www.adobe.com
- **Compiled HTML (.CHM)**. When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext markup (.HTM)**. When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.
- [Admin CD](#)
- [User CD](#)

Admin CD

- [Main browser screen](#)
- [Administrator Documentation screen](#)

Main browser screen

To view documentation on the Admin CD, insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. The main screen of the Admin CD Browser opens. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-1 Admin CD — main browser screen



 **NOTE:** Functionality for the **Animated Getting Started Guide** button will be added to future versions of the CD.

HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Printing-system Install Notes

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Printing-System Install Notes* (.HTM) contains important information about device features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

To view this guide from the Admin CD, click **Install Notes** on the main screen of the Admin CD Browser.

To gain access to the .HTM file:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6030MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.HTM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM6040MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.HTM.

NOTE: Document filenames on your CD may reference either "HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP" or "HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP" interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

Administrator Documentation screen

On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation** to open the **Administrator Documentation** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-2 Administrator Documentation screen



- [HP Embedded Web Server User Guide](#)
- [HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide](#)
- [HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide](#)

HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

The *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* provides information about accessing product status, settings, and networking through the Embedded Web Server.

View this guide from the Admin CD:

1. On the main screen of the CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Embedded Web Server Guide**.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6040MFP_EWS_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM6040MFP_EWS_FRWW.PDF.

NOTE: Document filenames on your CD may reference either "HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP" or "HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP" interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Print Servers Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator guide that contains information about connecting the product directly to a network.

View this guide from the Admin CD:

1. On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

HPJDAG_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDAG_FRWW.PDF.

When the file is open, click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

The guide can also be accessed as an MS Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the .CHM file:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

HPJDAG_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is HPJDAG_FRWW.CHM.

HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* (.PDF) contains important information about preconfiguring printer drivers before installation in network environments.

View this guide from the Admin CD:

1. On the main screen of the Admin CD Browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Preconfiguration User Guide**.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file: PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

User CD

- [Main browser screen](#)
- [User Guides](#)
- [Fax Guides](#)

Main browser screen

To view documentation on the User CD, insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. The main screen of the User CD Browser opens. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-3 User CD – main browser screen



 **NOTE:** Functionality for the **Product Demos and Simulations** button and the **Control Panel Wall Poster** button will be added to future versions of the CD.

Control Panel Wall Poster (.PDF Poster)

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Control Panel* is a wall poster that provides information about using the product control panel.

To view this document from the User CD, click **Control Panel Wall Poster** on the main screen of the User CD Browser.

To gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **Manuals\<language>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6030MFP_POSTER_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM6030MFP_POSTER_FRWW.PDF.

User Guides

On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides** to open the **User Guides** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-4 User Guides screen



- [User Guide](#)

User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides* (in .CHM and .PDF formats) describe basic product features.

View the .CHM version of these guides from the User CD:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **User Guide (Interactive)**.

The guide opens as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the .CHM file:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6040MFP_USE_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French, the file name is CM6040MFP_USE_FRWW.CHM.

NOTE: Document filenames on your CD may reference either "HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP" or "HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP" interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guides* are also provided as printable .PDF files. To view and print the .PDF versions of the guides:

1. In the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**. The guide opens.
3. Print the guide.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6040MFP_USE_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For French the file name is CM6040MFP_USE_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Fax Guides

On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **Fax Guides** to open the **Administrator Documentation** screen. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

Figure 1-5 Fax Guides screen



- [HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Fax Guide](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide](#)

 **NOTE:** Document filenames on your CD may reference either “HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP” or “HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP” interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Fax Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series Fax Guides* describe how to use the product as a standalone analog fax machine and provide information about product specifications and regulatory requirements.

View these guides from the User CD:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **Analog Fax User Guide**.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the User CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6040MFP_FAX_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The “XX” in the file name corresponds to the language. For French the file name is CM6040MFP_FAX_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide* describes the fax functions that are included with the Send Fax driver and provides instructions for the following tasks:

- Install the Send Fax driver
- Send faxes
- Configure fax settings
- Troubleshoot problems

View this guide from the User CD:

1. On the main screen of the User CD Browser, click **User Guides**.
2. Click **Send Fax Driver User Guide**.

Gain access to the .PDF file:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

CM6040MFP_FAX-SEND_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** For information about which languages are supported, see Table 1-4, 5, 6 in this chapter.

NOTE: The “XX” in the file name corresponds to the language. For French the file name is CM6040MFP_FAX-SEND_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

2 Software description

- [Windows printing-system software](#)
- [Windows printer-driver configuration](#)
- [HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool](#)
- [Advanced color use](#)
- [Embedded Web server](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Scan Setup Wizard](#)
- [MFP Send Fax Driver](#)
- [Font support](#)

Windows printing-system software

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Windows system requirements](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Printer driver](#)
- [Select the correct printer driver for Windows](#)
- [Priority for print settings](#)
- [Change printer-driver settings for Windows](#)
- [Printing system and installer](#)
- [Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems](#)

Supported operating systems for Windows

The product supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows 2000
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)



NOTE: Document filenames on your CD may reference either “HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP” or “HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP” interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

Windows system requirements

The HP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements for the following Windows operating systems.

- **Windows 2000:** 333-MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- **Windows XP:** 333-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Server 2003:** 550-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- **Windows Vista:** 800-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM

All Windows operating systems also have the following requirements:

- A CD-ROM, DVD drive, or Internet connection with which to install the printing-system software
- A dedicated USB 1.1 or USB 2.0 connectivity port, or network connection, to communicate with the product.

Macintosh system requirements

The HP printing-system software has the following minimum system requirements for the Macintosh OS X V10.2.8, V10.3, V10.4, and later operating systems:

- CD-ROM
- 128 MB RAM
- 160 MB of free hard disk space

 **NOTE:** For Mac OS V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel Core Processor Macs are supported.

Printer driver

Printer drivers provide access to product features, such as printing on custom-sized paper, resizing documents, and inserting watermarks.

 **NOTE:** The most recent drivers are available at www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or at www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp.

Select the correct printer driver for Windows

Printer drivers provide access to the product features and allow the computer to communicate with the product (using a printer language). Check the installation notes and readme files on the product CD for additional software and languages.

HP PCL 6 driver description

- Recommended for printing in all Windows environments
- Provides the overall best speed, print quality, and product-feature support for most users
- Developed to align with the Windows Graphic Device Interface (GDI) for the best speed in Windows environments
- Might not be fully compatible with third-party and custom software programs that are based on PCL 5

HP postscript level 3 emulation universal printer driver description

- Recommended for printing with Adobe® software programs or with other highly graphics-intensive software programs
- Provides support for printing from postscript level 3 emulation needs or for postscript flash font support
- Performs slightly faster than the PCL 6 driver when using Adobe software programs

HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver description

- Recommended for general office printing in Windows environments
- Compatible with previous PCL versions and older HP LaserJet products
- The best choice for printing from third-party or custom software programs

- The best choice when operating with mixed environments, which require the product to be set to PCL 5 (UNIX, Linux, mainframe)
- Designed for use in corporate Windows environments to provide a single driver for use with multiple printer models
- Preferred when printing to multiple printer models from a mobile Windows computer

Priority for print settings

Changes to print settings are prioritized depending on where the changes are made:

 **NOTE:** The names of commands and dialog boxes might vary depending on your software program.

- **Page Setup dialog box:** Click **Page Setup** or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed here override settings changed anywhere else.
- **Print dialog box:** Click **Print**, **Print Setup**, or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed in the **Print** dialog box have a lower priority and do *not* override changes made in the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- **Printer Properties dialog box (printer driver):** Click **Properties** in the **Print** dialog box to open the printer driver. Settings changed in the **Printer Properties** dialog box do not override settings anywhere else in the printing software.
- **Default printer driver settings:** The default printer driver settings determine the settings used in all print jobs, *unless* settings are changed in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Printer Properties** dialog boxes.
- **Printer control panel settings:** Settings changed at the printer control panel have a lower priority than changes made anywhere else.

Change printer-driver settings for Windows

Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	Change the default settings for all print jobs	Change the product configuration settings
1. On the File menu in the software program, click Print. 2. Select the driver, and then click Properties or Preferences. The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.	1. Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 (using the default Start menu view): Click Start, and then click Printers and Faxes. -or- Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 (using the Classic Start menu view): Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers. -or- Windows Vista: Click Start, click Control Panel, and then in the category for Hardware and Sound click Printer. 2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select Printing Preferences.	1. Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 (using the default Start menu view): Click Start, and then click Printers and Faxes. -or- Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 (using the Classic Start menu view): Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers. -or- Windows Vista: Click Start, click Control Panel, and then in the category for Hardware and Sound click Printer. 2. Right-click the driver icon, and then select Properties. 3. Click the Device Settings tab.

Printing system and installer

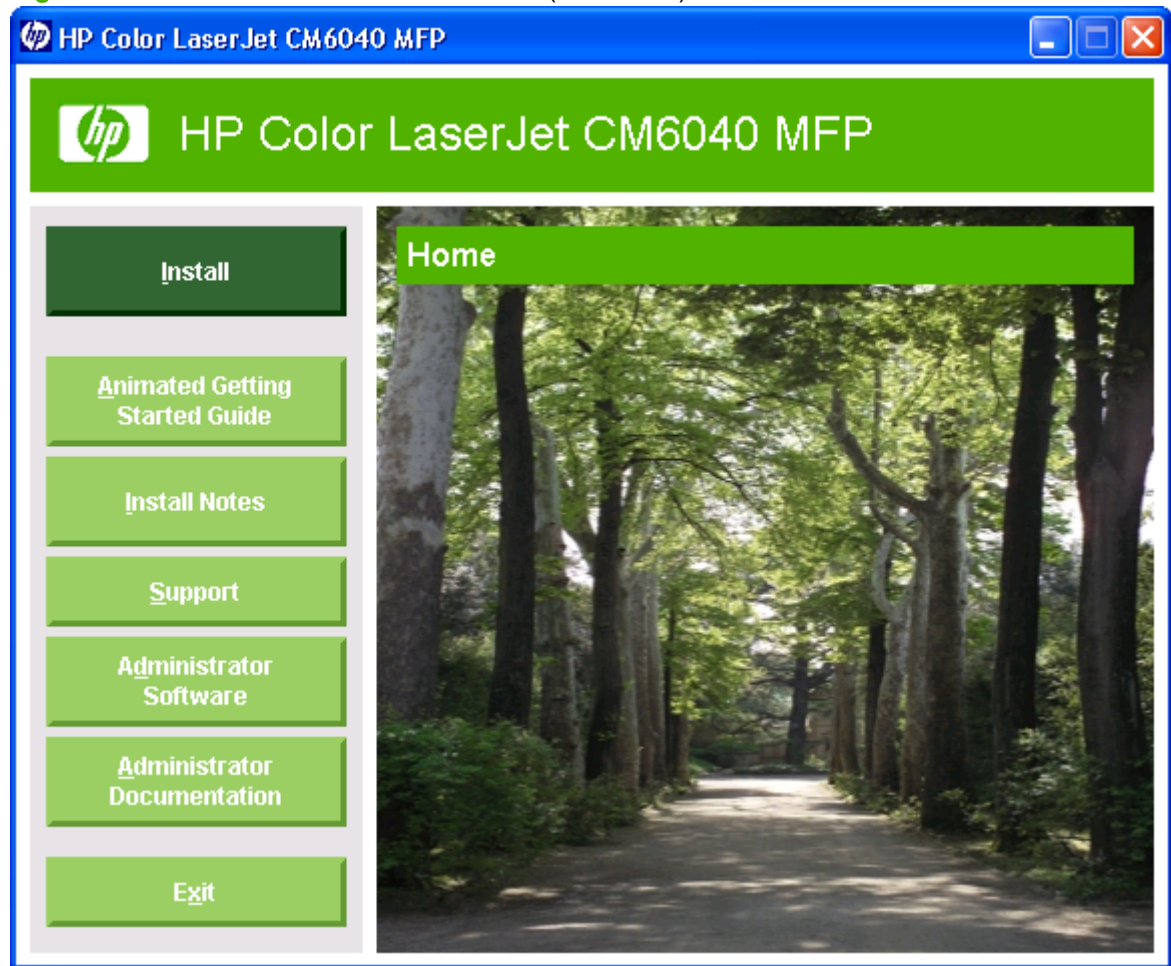
- [Printing-system software CD for Windows systems](#)
- [Installer features](#)

Printing-system software CD for Windows systems

In supported Windows operating systems, insert the Administrator (hereafter “Admin”) CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser. Use the CD Browser to install the drivers and related

components and to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, and optional HP software.

Figure 2-1 Installation software CD Browser (Admin CD)



If the screen does not appear when you insert the Admin CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD Browser:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Run**.
3. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
4. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

The main screen of the Admin CD Browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

 **NOTE:** The options available for each product might differ from those in the figure.

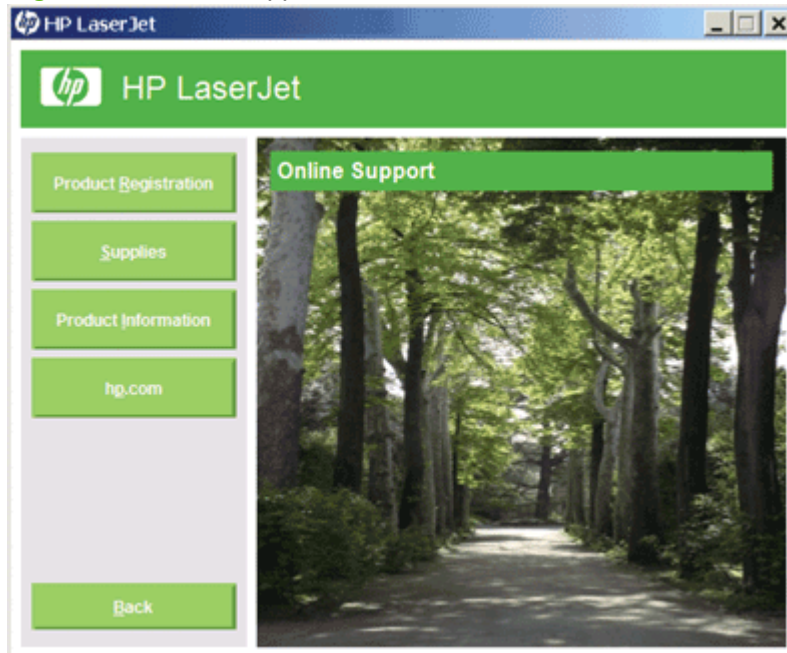
Install. Brings up the **Install** menu. **INSTALL PCL6 DRIVER** is the recommended path. The installer only installs the item selected; to install an additional item, select the item that you would like to install. PCL 6 is the recommended driver. PCL 5 and PS drivers are linked to the Web; both are universal print drivers (UPDs).

Animated Getting Started Guide. Use this option to view a visual guide to aid in the setup of the device. This guide provides video animations of installing certain features and specific hardware installation steps.

Install Notes brings up the installation notes for the software for this product.

Support. This option provides the following links to support information:

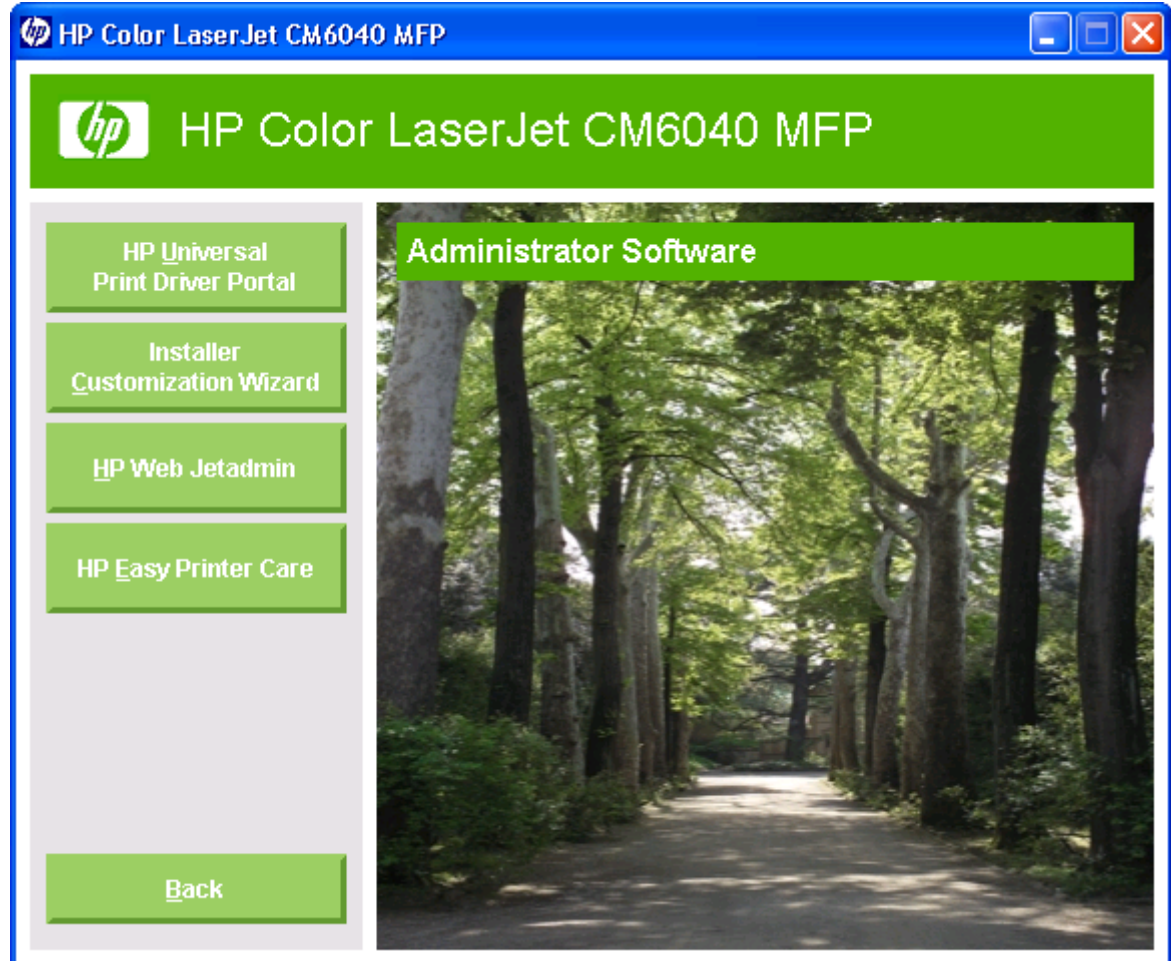
Figure 2-2 Online Support screen



- Click **Product Registration** to register the product online.
- Click **Color Printing Access & Usage** to access color printing.
- Click **Supplies** for information about ordering supplies.
- Click **Product Information** to open the HP Instant Support Web page for support information and updates for the product.
- Click **hp.com** to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Administrator Software. This option provides the following links to administrator software programs for the product.

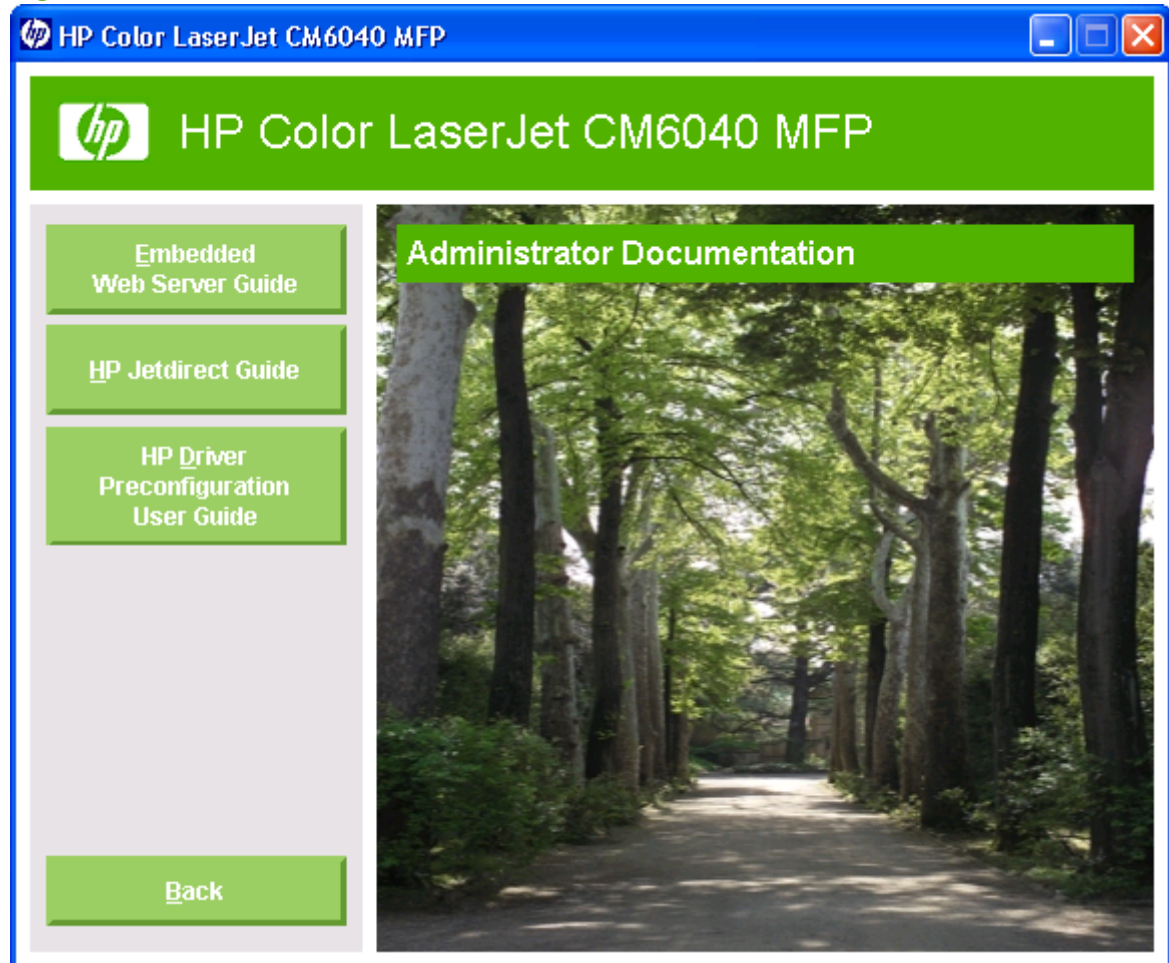
Figure 2-3 Optional Software screen



- **HP Universal Print Driver Portal.** Use this option to download the HP Universal Printer Driver (HP UPD) from the HP Web site. Use this printer driver to ensure a standard interface to find and print to an HP product.
- **Installer Customization Wizard.** Use this wizard to customize the printing-system installer to install silently for unattended installations.
- **HP Web Jetadmin.** Use this option to download HP Web Jetadmin software from the HP Web site.
- **HP Easy Printer Care Software.** Use this option to download and install HP Easy Care. This maintenance tool helps track and maintain multiple products by providing information about status, alert notifications, usage, and supplies.

Administrator Documentation. Use this option to view the administrator documentation. The following document options are available:

Figure 2-4 Administrator Documentation screen



- **Embedded Web Server Guide**
- **HP Jetdirect Guide**
- **HP Driver Preconfiguration Guide**

Click **Back** to return to the main CD Browser screen.

 **NOTE:** To view documentation in .PDF format, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader must be installed on the computer. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available at the following Web site:

<http://www.adobe.com>

Installer features

The HP Driver Installation Utility (HP-DIU) installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the printing-system software in supported Windows operating systems.

The HP-DIU installer offers the following features:

- The Administrator software CD features an interactive software interface.
- Network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked product in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language. You can use the installer to select any of the languages on the Admin CD.

For custom installations, the Admin CD also includes the Installer Customization Wizard.

- The HP Customization Utility for custom installations

All of the printing-system components are installed by using the HP-DIU installer. The installer automatically detects the language of choice and the operating system.

Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems

Access to driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the printing system is installed.

 **NOTE:** For a list of product drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp

- or -

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp

In supported Windows operating systems, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. Click **Start**, and then do one of the following:

For Windows 2000: Select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

-or-

For Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP Professional: Select **Settings**, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

For Windows XP Home: Click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows Vista: Click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product driver icon.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **About** tab.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD version number (in the **Driver Files:** field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

Windows printer-driver configuration

The HP PCL 6 printer driver features bidirectional communication technology which, in environments that support the printer driver, provides automatic discovery and printer-driver configuration for product accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs).

- [Printer-driver autoconfiguration](#)
- [Bidirectional communication](#)
- [Enterprise AutoConfiguration](#)
- [Update Now](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)

Printer-driver autoconfiguration



NOTE: The 64-bit operating systems do not support printer-driver autoconfiguration.

Automatic discovery and printer-driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a printer driver is installed by using Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC)
- When using the **Update Now** feature for a printer driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, printer-driver auto configuration and EAC are *not* available in 32-bit Windows operating systems over a direct connection when the printing-system software is installed by using the Add Printer Wizard. Direct connection is a parallel or USB port connection.

Table 2-1 Availability of automatic discovery and printer- driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows

Connection type	Add Printer Wizard install	HPDIU
Network	Yes	Yes
Direct connection	No	Yes

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the product during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the printer driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the product to respond to data inquiries from the computer, such as what type of print media is available and what accessories are connected to the product. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the product. If the connection does not have this capability, the product can only accept commands from the host and cannot respond to data inquiries from the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the printer driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the Admin CD or the Add Printer Wizard to install the printer driver. Printer-driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the product. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the printer driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the product and automatically match the printer driver with the product configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the printer driver or whenever the **Update Now** feature is used.

If the product configuration changes after installation, the printer driver can be automatically updated by using the **Update Now** feature in environments that support bidirectional communication.

Update Now

If the product configuration changes after installation, the printer driver can be automatically updated by using the **Update Now** feature in environments that support bidirectional communication. For example, if the product is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, use **Update Now** to query the product and update the printer-driver settings to match the new product configuration.

The **Update Now** feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab of the HP PCL 6 printer driver.

To activate **Update Now**, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**, and then do one of the following:

For Windows 2000: Select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

-or-

For Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP Professional: Select **Settings**, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

For Windows XP Home: Click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows Vista: Click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.
4. Click **Device Settings**.
5. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand it and show the options.

6. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
7. Click **OK** to save the setting.

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a software architecture and set of tools for customizing and distributing HP printing-system software in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Web Jetadmin, information technology (IT) administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and product defaults for HP printer drivers before installing the printer drivers in the network environment.

HP Web Jetadmin is most beneficial when configuring printer drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- Product settings
- Printing-preferences settings

HP Web Jetadmin configures the printer driver to match the accessories that are installed on the product, or to match the settings that IT administrators make in the configuration .CFG file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, or job-storage settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three steps:

- Printer-driver acquisition
- Printer-driver preconfiguration
- Printer-driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

Printer-driver preconfiguration is supported through three tools. All three are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are packaged differently, either

to support established product installation workflows or to allow the user to deploy and install the printer driver. The following tools support printer-driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small standalone Windows-based software program that administrators can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular printer driver and make modifications that are applied when that printer driver is installed on the host computer. Use it in environments that have an established process for deploying printer drivers. It is used in the same way as any ordinary Windows-based software program.

The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/hpdpc

- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** HP Web Jetadmin provides a program to create printer queues in supported Windows operating systems. The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds screens for customizing the printer drivers that are being installed for the queues. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator is not supported.

The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/bizsupport/wja/live/manual/8.0/html/wjacomp_winnt.html

- **Customization Utility.** The Customization Utility enables an IT administrator to preconfigure the printer drivers when customizing the installation for a silent install.

For detailed information about customizing printer drivers with the Customization Utility, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.

- [Configurable settings](#)
- [Continuous export](#)

Configurable settings

The following PCL 6 printer-driver features can be preconfigured. Lockable features, which can be locked to prevent end users from changing the setting, have the word **<Lock>** at the end of their respective descriptions.

 **NOTE:** Some selections and options, such as the **Finishing Accessory** option, may depend on which device setting has been selected.

Printing Preferences tab

- **Print on Both Sides (duplex):** The options are **True** or **False**. **<Lock>**
- **Orientation:** The options are either **Portrait**, **Landscape**, **Rotated Portrait**, or **Rotated Landscape**.
- **Print in Grayscale:** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**. **<Lock>**
- **Color Options:** The options are either **Automatic** or **Manual**.
- **Paper Size:** See the drop-down list associated with this feature.
- **Media Type:** The options include all of the media types that the product supports. **<Lock>**
- **Services:** The options are either **Disabled** or **Enabled**.

- **Paper Source:** The options are **Printer Auto Select**, **Manual Feed (Tray 1)**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, or **Tray 3**. **<Lock>**
- **Stapling/Folding:** The options are either **None**, **One Staple Left**, **One Staple Right**, **Two Staples Left**, **Two Staples Right**, and **Two Staples Top**.
- **Output Bin:** The option is **Auto Select**. **<Lock>**
- **Job Retention Mode:** The options are **Off**., **Proof & Hold**, **Private Job**, **Quick Copy**, or **Stored Job**. **<Lock>**

Advanced Features The following advanced features are also available:

- **Pages per Sheet:** The options are **1**, **2**, **4**, **6**, **9**, or **16** .
- **Booklet Printing:** The options are **Off**, **Left Edge Binding**, or **Right Edge Binding**.
- **Booklet Target Size:** The option is **None**.
- **Send True Type As Bitmap:** The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Print all Text as Black:** The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Print Document On:** The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees:** The options are **Enable** or **Disable**.
- **Scale to Fit:**. The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Percent of Normal Size:** The options are **Enter %** or **25-400**.
- **Watermarks:** The options are **None**, **Confidential**, **Draft**, or **Sample**.
- **Copies:** The options are **1** or **(Enter Number)**.
- **PostScript Language Level:** The options are **1**, **2** or **3**.
- **Mirror Output:**. The options are **True** or **False**.

Device Settings tab

- **Tray 3:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed** .
- **Tray 4:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed** .
- **Tray 5:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed** .
- **Printer Alert Notification Settings:** The options are **Show for Every Print Job**, **Show for Device Errors and Warnings**, **Show for Device Errors**, or **Disabled**.

This advanced feature also contains the following sub-features:

- **Device Query Interval:** The options are **Normal** or **Minimize Network Traffic**.
- **Access HP Online Product Support:** The options, available through drop-down menu, are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Shop for Supplies:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Allow Manual Duplexing:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

- **Duplex Unit:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Mopier Enabled:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Printer Hard-Disk:** The options are **Installed** or **Not Installed**.
- **Job Storage:** The options are **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- **Accessory Output Bin:** The options are **Not Installed**, **HP 3-Bin Stapler/Stacker - Mailbox Mode**, **HP 3-Bin Function Stapler/Stacker - Function Separator**, **HP 3-Bin Stapler/Stacker - Stacker Mode**, **HP Booklet Maker - Mailbox Mode**, and **HP Booklet Maker - Stacker Mode**.
- **Memory:** The options are **768**, **896**, or **1024**.

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the printer-driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term *continuous export* refers to the ability of the printer driver to copy the latest printer-driver settings to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the printer driver is used to upgrade the printer driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** in a printer driver that was originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP or Windows Vista. The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between printer drivers of identical models.

 **NOTE:** Not all of the printer-driver components can be exported; however, the exportable components are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

Use the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool, a Web-based diagnostic software program, to determine whether the correct and most current printer driver for the product is in use. Use the following steps to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the products that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. The tool gathers information about the products, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the printer driver.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is open, select the HP product that you want to check. The tool verifies whether the latest printer driver is being used, provides feedback if an incorrect printer driver is being used, and indicates whether an updated printer-driver version is available. Click the latest printer-driver version to download and install it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

Advanced color use

- [Restrict color use](#)
- [International Color Consortium \(ICC\) profiles](#)
- [PANTONE color profiles \[INTERNAL\]](#)

Restrict color use

This product includes a **Restrict Color** setting. A network administrator can use the setting to restrict user access to the color printing in order to conserve color toner. If you are unable to print in color, see your network administrator.

Restrict color printing and copying from the control panel

For information about how to restrict color printing and how to copy from the control panel, see the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guide; or, go to www.hp.com/go/coloraccess.

International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles

HP provides cyan-magenta-yellow-black (CMYK) and standard red-green-blue (sRGB) International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles with the product. The CMYK profile can only be used with a postscript printer driver; the sRGB profile can be used with any of the product printer drivers. The profiles are available at the following HP Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp

The ICC profiles describe the way that color will be interpreted in the default CMYK and RGB modes. These profiles can be used for color conversions in a color-managed workflow. The sRGB profile matches the default RGB mode (sRGB), which is enabled with the **Default (sRGB)** or **Color** setting in either a PCL or postscript printer driver. The product interprets CMYK data according to the Specifications for Web Offset Publications (SWOP) simulation when **Default CMYK+** is the selected **CMYK Color** setting in the postscript printer driver, and a more accurate SWOP rendering can be produced by selecting the **SWOP** setting. This standard defines how a particular set of CMYK ink colors should behave. Emulation for Dainippon Press (DIC) and Euro-standard CMYK inks used in Asia and Europe are also available and can be selected from the printer driver.

PANTONE color profiles [INTERNAL]

Most software programs that support the use of PANTONE colors for graphic objects will include the PANTONE® name in the postscript output along with the color values that are assigned to the object. For best results, select an application that uses PANTONE palette in a CMYK workspace and print with the Postscript printer driver with the SWOP inkset emulation selected.

When **SWOP** is selected as the **CMYK Color** setting, these CMYK values provide a good reproduction of the PANTONE 4C spot-color simulations.

PANTONE provides product- and software-specific palettes for some HP Color LaserJet products. Using the custom colors in these palettes can provide an alternative match to the 4C spot-color simulation. However, files that use these palettes are not portable to other products.

Vector graphics, such as company logos that are created in PANTONE Application Palettes, can be imported into Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or other Microsoft Office software programs. To import, the color program must create an encapsulated postscript (.EPS) file of the image. By using the **Insert file** function, you can then import the file into the Office document.



NOTE: Cutting and pasting from the clipboard does *not* work. These steps do not preserve the PANTONE name or the CMYK palette value.

Embedded Web server

The product is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about product and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, Apple Safari, or Firefox.

The embedded Web server resides on the product. It is not loaded on a network server.

The embedded Web server provides an interface to the product that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on the computer. To gain access to the embedded Web server, type the IP address for the product in the address line of the browser.

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, which is available on the Admin CD.



NOTE: Document filenames on your CD may reference either “HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP” or “HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP” interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool for HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet, and it should be installed only on the network administrator's computer.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, visit www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin.

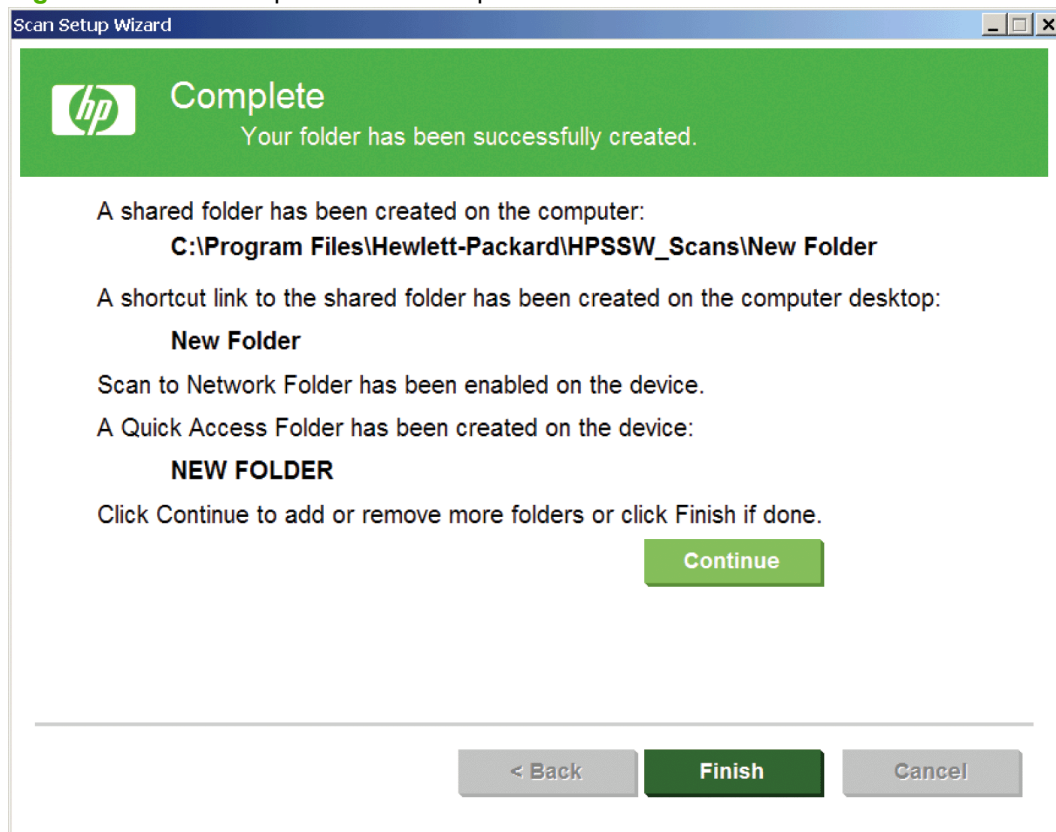
When installed on a host server, a Windows client can gain access to HP Web Jetadmin by using a supported Web browser (such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer 4.x or Netscape Navigator 4.x or later) by navigating to the HP Web Jetadmin host.

Scan Setup Wizard

The Scan Setup Wizard allows users to scan documents from the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series and store them in a folder on a server or network computer. Then users who have proper credentials to access the network folder can retrieve the documents, save the documents to their computers, and print them.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series must be connected via the network to use the Scan Setup Wizard.

Figure 2-5 Scan Setup Wizard — Complete screen



MFP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer through the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 300 is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, see the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be downloaded by going to www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_software or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_software, and then clicking the **Manuals** option from the left navigation bar.

The following operating systems support the HP Easy Printer Care:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)

Font support

- [Basic Windows fonts](#)
- [Default printing-system fonts](#)

Basic Windows fonts

Supported Windows operating systems includes the following basic fonts, which can be used with any HP product:

- Arial
- Arial Bold
- Arial Bold Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New
- Courier New Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Courier New Italic
- Symbol
- Times New Roman
- Times New Roman Bold
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Wingdings

Default printing-system fonts

The following default fonts are installed with the printing-system software.

Table 2-2 Default fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF

Table 2-2 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica®	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANC____.TTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGS____.TTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF

Table 2-2 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMP5_.TTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF

The following additional PS emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 2-3 Additional PS emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF

Table 2-3 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF
Goudy	Bold Italic	PS_10695.TTF

Table 2-3 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF

Table 2-3 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF

3 Install Windows printing-system components

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh systems. For information about Macintosh software, see Chapter 5 of this document. Linux and UNIX systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series, and software is available on the Web. This chapter provides procedures for installing and uninstalling the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software for Windows operating systems.

- [Supported operating systems for Windows](#)
- [Windows operating system requirements](#)
- [Install overview](#)
- [Software installation types for Windows](#)
- [Installation options](#)
- [Microsoft Windows general installation overview](#)
- [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Use the MFP Send Fax Driver](#)
- [Create a network folder using the Scan Setup Wizard](#)
- [Install documentation and optional software](#)
- [Uninstall software](#)

Supported operating systems for Windows

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supports the following Windows operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)

Windows operating system requirements

- Windows 2000: 333 MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- Windows Server 2003: 550 MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Windows XP: 333 MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Windows Vista: 800 MHz processor with 512 MB RAM

 **NOTE:** All Windows operating systems also require a CD-ROM, DVD drive, or Internet connection to install the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software, as well as either a dedicated universal serial bus (USB 1.1 or 2.0) connectivity port or network connection to communicate with the MFP.

NOTE: Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows NT are not supported.

Install overview

The software for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series comes on a single CD. The Setup program installs the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software from the CD onto the hard disk and updates Windows files.

For all supported operating systems, each install option presents a series of query dialog boxes that guide you through the installation process.

Software installation types for Windows

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software can be installed in the following ways:

- HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) — Recommended, included on the Admin CD and from downloaded drivers available at www.hp.com.
- Microsoft Add Printer Wizard

Installation options

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software can be installed when the product is connected to the computer in the following configurations:

- Directly connected via a USB port.
- Connected via the network.

Microsoft Windows general installation overview

HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems

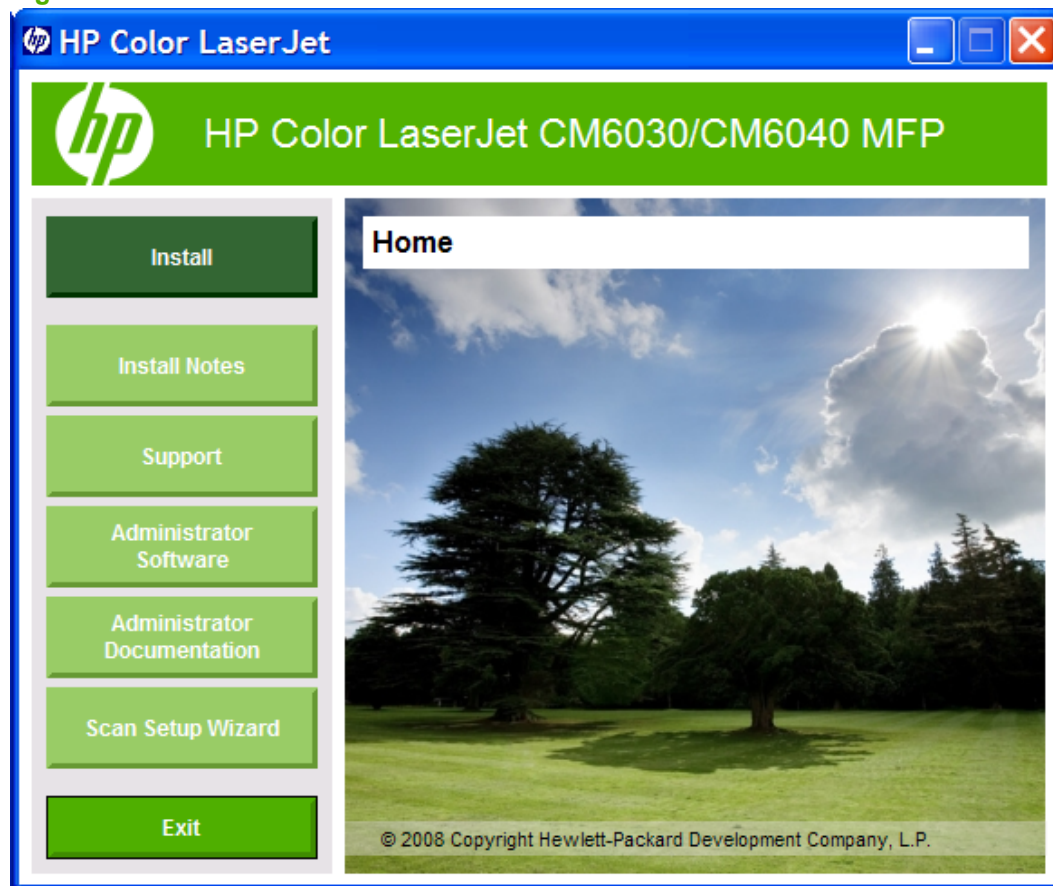
In supported Windows environments (Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows Vista), insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser. Use the CD Browser to install the drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation, an Installer Customization Utility, and optional HP software.

If the installation screen does not appear when you insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD Browser:

1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
2. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
3. Click the **OK** button.

The main screen of the software CD Browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel. The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software CD.

Figure 3-1 CD Browser – Main screen



 **NOTE:** Document filenames on your CD may reference either “HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP” or “HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP” interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

Install

 **NOTE:** For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 80](#). For a general overview of the installation process, see either [Install Windows software for direct connections on page 78](#) or [Install Windows software for networks on page 79](#).

Click the **Install** button and select the driver you want to install to launch the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software installation.

- Click the **Install PCL 6 Driver** button to install the PCL 6 driver.
- Click the **Install Documentation and Optional Software** button to install the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series MFP User Guides*.
- Click the **Install PCL 5 Driver** button to install the PCL 5 driver, which is a UPD that can you download at www.hp.com.
- Click the **Install PostScript Driver** button to install the PS emulation driver, which is a UPD that can you download at www.hp.com.
- Click the **Install HP MFP Send Fax Driver** button to install the Send Fax Driver.
- Click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button to install the Scan Setup Wizard.

 **NOTE:** For more information about HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printer drivers, see chapter 4 of this document.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-2 CD Browser — Install screen



Install Notes

Click the **Install Notes** button to view the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP Series software install notes.

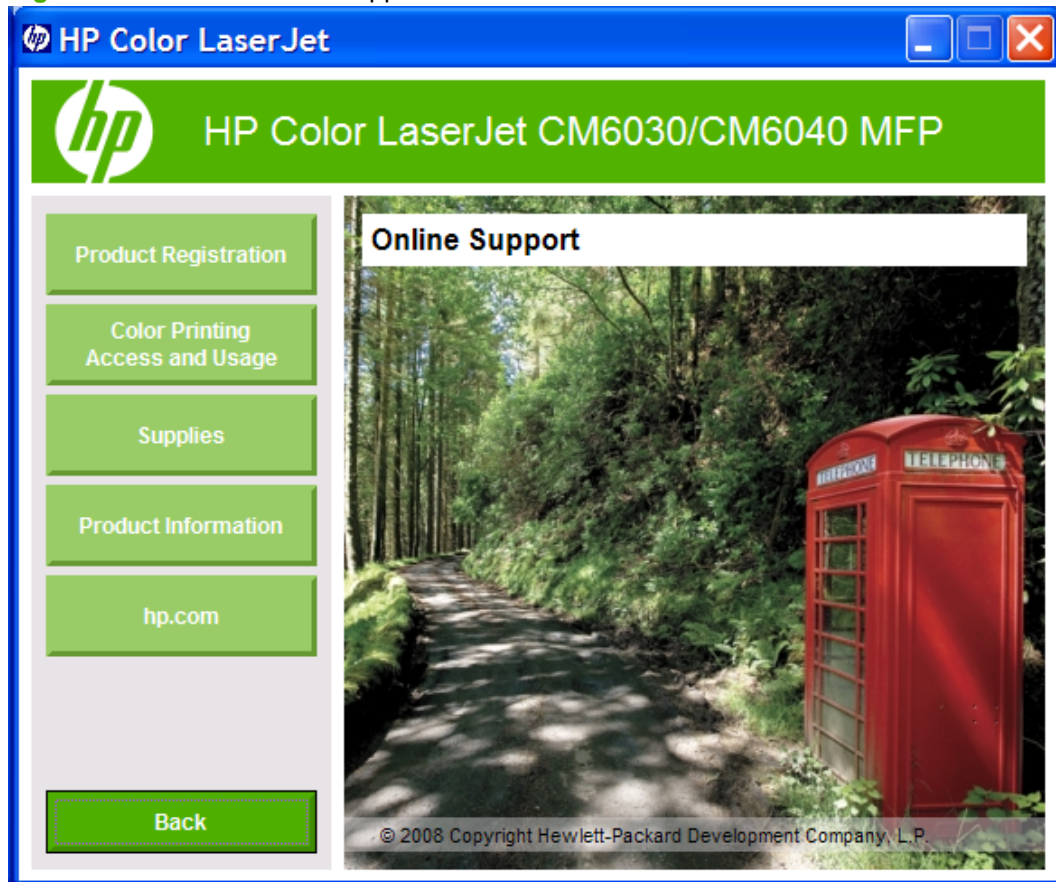
Support

Click the **Support** button to find support information for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series on HP Web sites:

- Click the **Product Registration** button to register the product online.
- Click the **Color Printing Access and Usage** button for information about color printing.
- Click the **Supplies** button for information about ordering HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supplies.
- Click the **Product Information** button to open the HP Instant Support Web page for support information and updates for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series.
- Click the **hp.com** button to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-3 CD Browser — Support screen



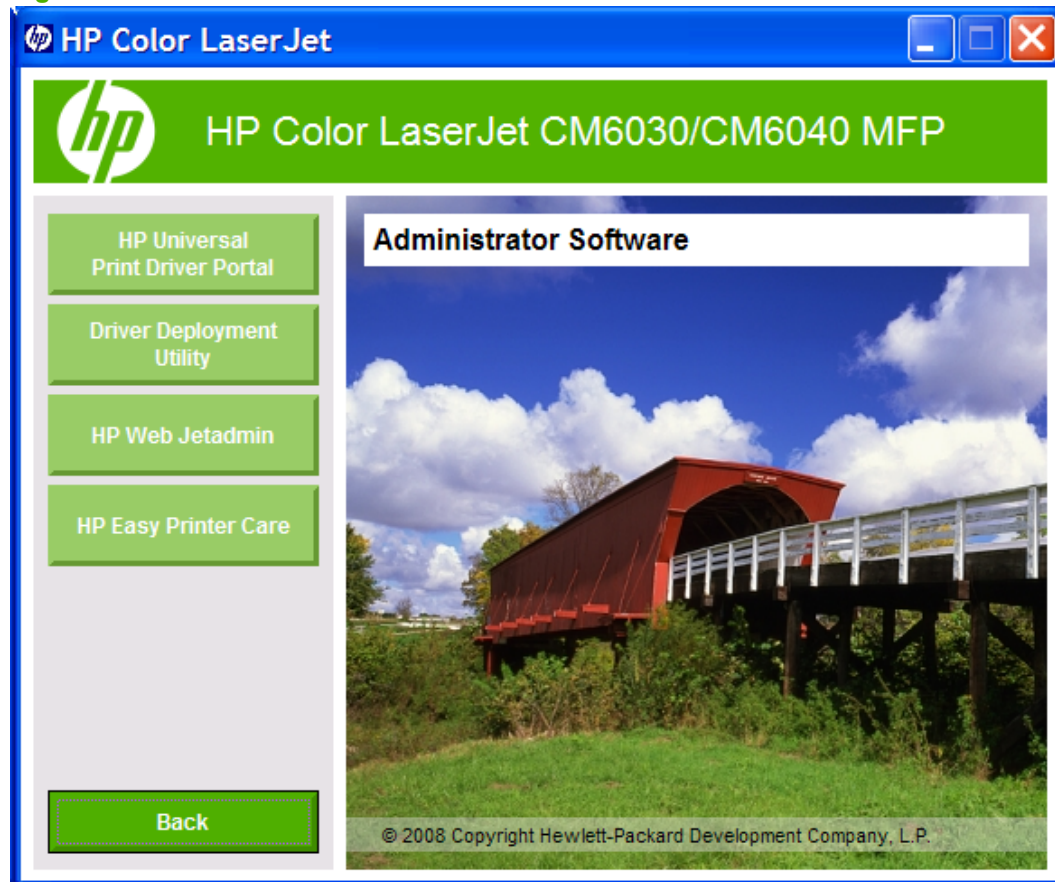
Administrator Software

Click the **Administrator Software** button to view a list of HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series support tools for network administrators.

- Click the **HP Universal Print Driver Portal** button for more information and to download a single driver that can be used to print to virtually any HP product.
- Click the **Installer Customization Wizard** button for more information and to create a silent, unattended driver installation for end users.
- Click the **HP Web Jetadmin** button for more information and to download a Web browser-based network management tool designed for network administrators.
- Click the **HP Easy Printer Care** button for more information and to download a utility to manage up to 15 products.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-4 CD Browser — Administrator Software screen



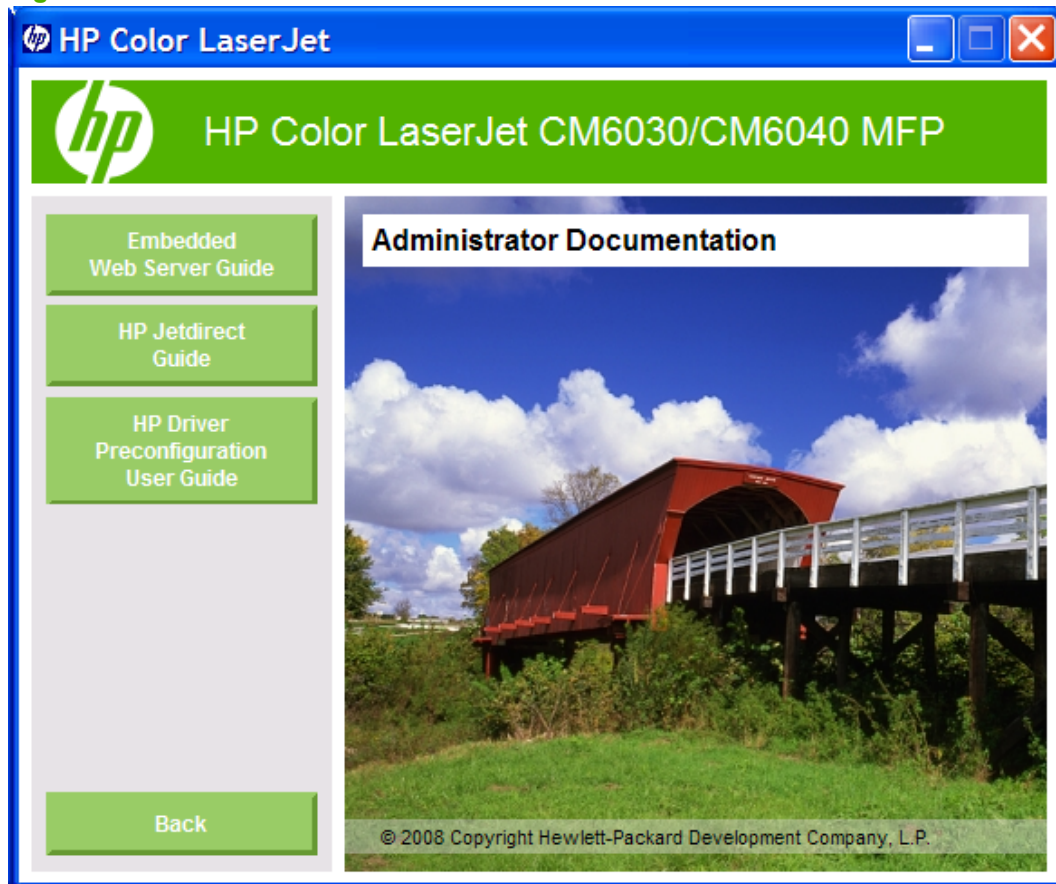
Administrator Documentation

Click the **Administrator Documentation** button to view HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series support guides for network administrators.

- Click the **Embedded Web Server Guide** button to view the Embedded Web Server (EWS) guide.
- Click the **HP Jetdirect Guide** button to view network installation and troubleshooting information.
- Click the **HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide** button to find out how to create and deploy a printer driver with customized settings.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-5 CD Browser — Administrator Documentation screen



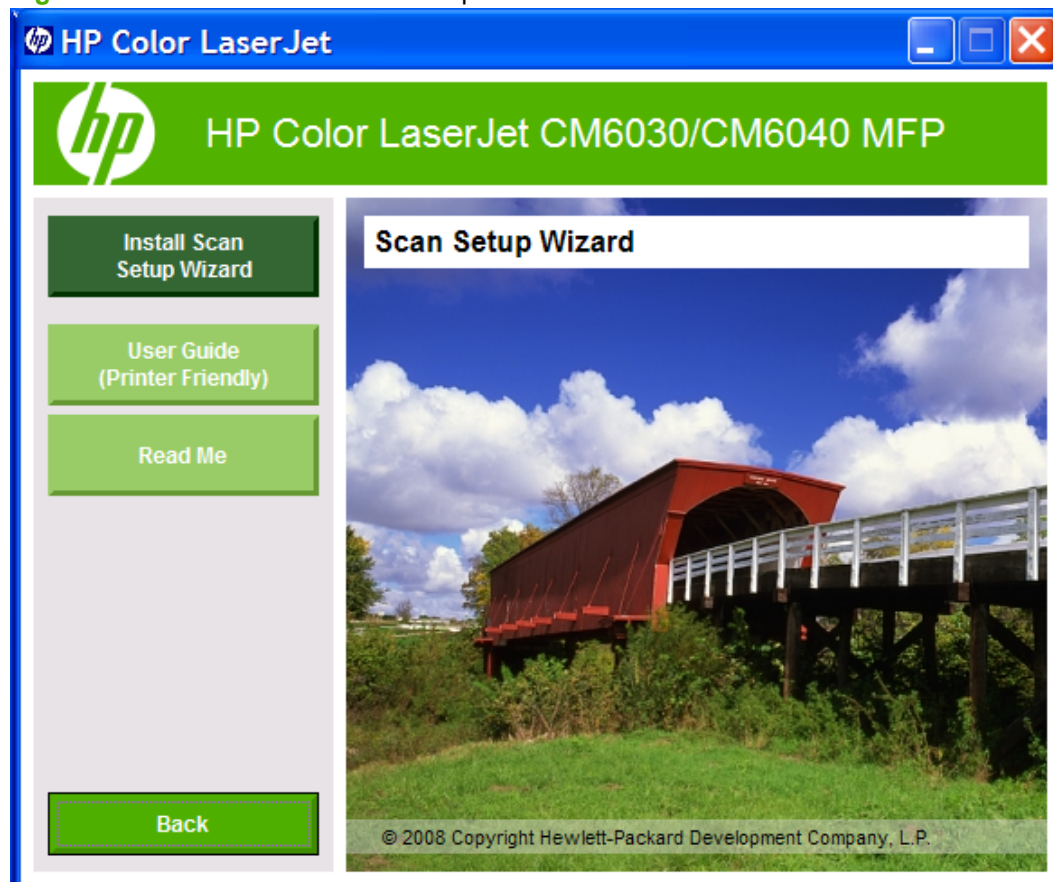
Scan Setup Wizard

Click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button to create a network folder and to learn more about the Scan Setup Wizard:

- Click the **Install Scan Setup Wizard** button to create a network folder where scanned documents can be automatically saved.
- Click the **User Guide (Printer Friendly)** button to view the Scan Setup Wizard operating and troubleshooting information.
- Click the **Read Me** button to view additional information about the Scan Setup Wizard.

Click the **Back** button to return to the main CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-6 CD Browser — Scan Setup Wizard screen



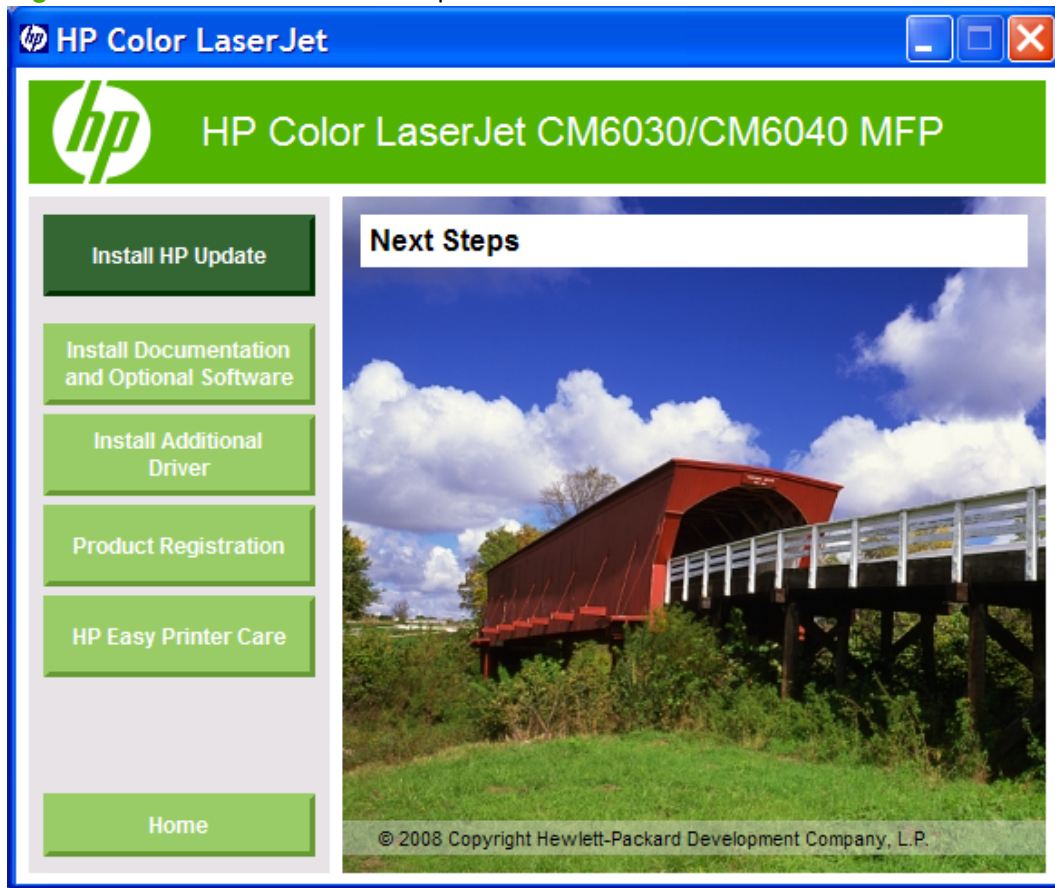
Next Steps

The **Next Steps** dialog box appears after you install a printer driver. The following options are available:

- Click the **Install HP Update** button to install a utility that provides software and driver updates for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series.
- Click the **Install Documentation and Optional Software** button to install the *HP LaserJet M9040 / M9050 MFP Install Notes*, *HP LaserJet M9040 / M9050 MFP Install Notes*, the HP LaserJet M9040/ M9050 MFP Screen Fonts or the *HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 User Guide*.
- Click the **Install Additional Driver** button and select the driver you want to install to launch the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software installation.
- Click the **Product Registration** button to register your product online.
- Click the **HP Easy Printer Care** button for more information and to download a utility to manage up to 15 products.
- Click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button to create a network folder where scanned documents can be automatically saved.

Click the **Exit** button to close the CD Browser screen.

Figure 3-7 CD Browser — Next Steps screen



Install Windows software for direct connections



NOTE: For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 80](#).

When installing the product software in a direct-connect environment, always install the software before connecting the USB cable (the software installer will prompt you to connect the cable at the appropriate time). In addition, make sure to use a standard 2-meter USB cable.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
- c. Click the **OK** button.
3. When prompted, click the **Install** button. The printer driver screen appears.
4. Select the driver that you want to install and follow the instructions on the computer screen.
5. After the installation is complete, you might need to restart the computer.
6. Print a test page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the product CD-ROM or the flyer that came in the product box, or go to www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp for help or more information.

Install Windows software for networks

 **NOTE:** For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions on page 80](#).

The software on the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series CD-ROM supports network installation with a Microsoft network. For network installation on other operating systems, go to www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp.

The installer does not support product installation or object creation on Novell servers. It supports only direct-mode network installations between Windows computers and a product. To install the product and create objects on a Novell server, use an HP utility (such as HP Web Jetadmin) or a Novell utility (such as NWAdmin).

1. Make sure that you have administrator privileges.
2. Make sure that the HP Jetdirect print server and product are correctly connected to the network. Print a configuration page, and find the HP Jetdirect page.

To print a configuration page from the product control panel, perform the following:

- a. Touch **Administration**.
- b. Touch **Information**.
- c. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
- d. Touch **Configuration Page**.
- e. Touch **Print**.

On the HPJetdirect page, locate the IP address that is currently configured. You might need this address to initially identify the product on your network and complete the installation.

3. Close all programs.
4. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
5. When prompted, click the **Install** button. The printer driver screen appears.
 6. Select the driver that you want to install and follow the instructions on the computer screen.
 7. After the installation is complete, you might need to restart the computer.
 8. Print a test page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions

Install the printer driver using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

A series of dialog boxes appear during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software in Windows environments.



NOTE: You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software installation by clicking the **Cancel** button.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The software installer detects the language of the operating system, and then display the main menu of the CD Browser program in the same language.

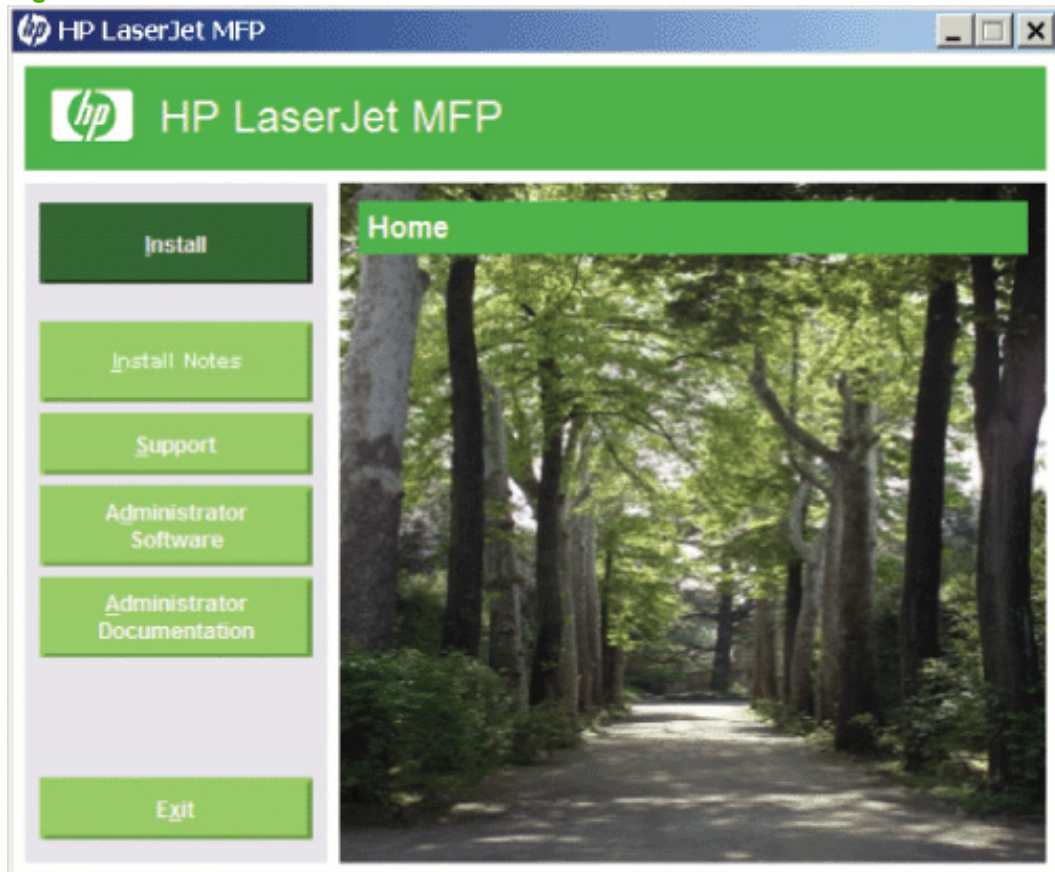
If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
- c. Click the **OK** button.

3. Click the **Install** button to continue to the **Please choose a driver to install** screen.

 **NOTE:** For more information about the options listed below, see *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems*.

Figure 3-8 Software Installation — Initial screen

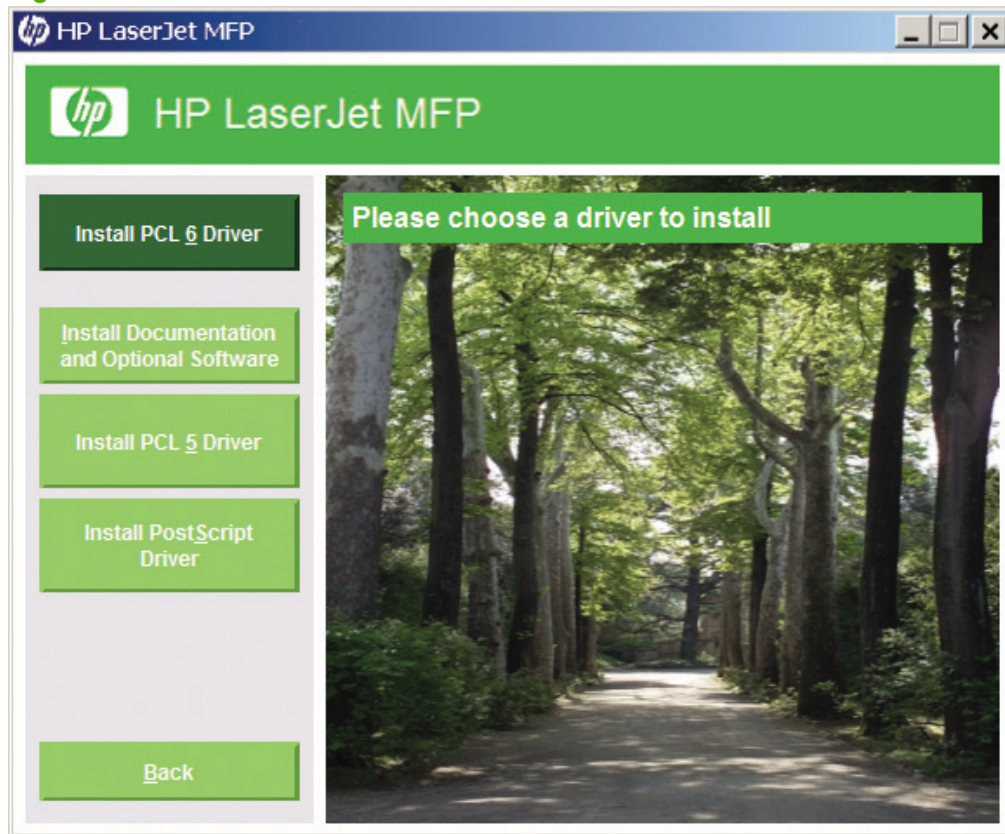


4. Select the driver you want to install to continue to the **License Agreement** screen.

 **NOTE:** Each software component or printer driver is installed individually. Additional software components and printer drivers can be installed at the conclusion of the software installation by clicking either the **Install Documentation and Optional Software** button or the **Install Additional Driver** button from the **Next Steps** dialog box.

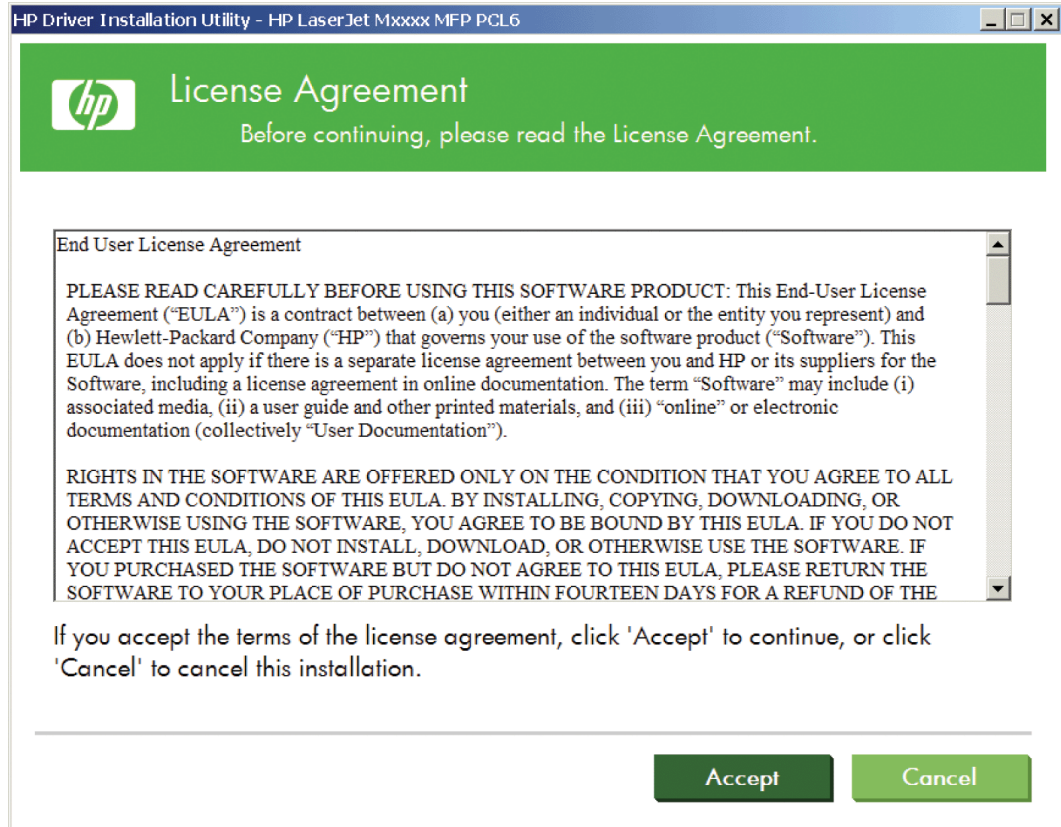
For more information about HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printer drivers, see Chapter 4 of this document. For more information documentation and optional software, see chapter 6 of this document..

Figure 3-9 Software Installation — Please choose a driver to install screen



5. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-10 Software Installation — License Agreement screen



6. Select an option based on how the product will be connected to the computer.

Figure 3-11 Software Installation — Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP LaserJet Mxxxx MFP PCL6

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☐ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

☐ Host Name

☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

< Back Install Cancel

- **Connect directly to the computer:** Select this option and then click the **Install** button if the product will be connected to the computer using a USB cable. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.



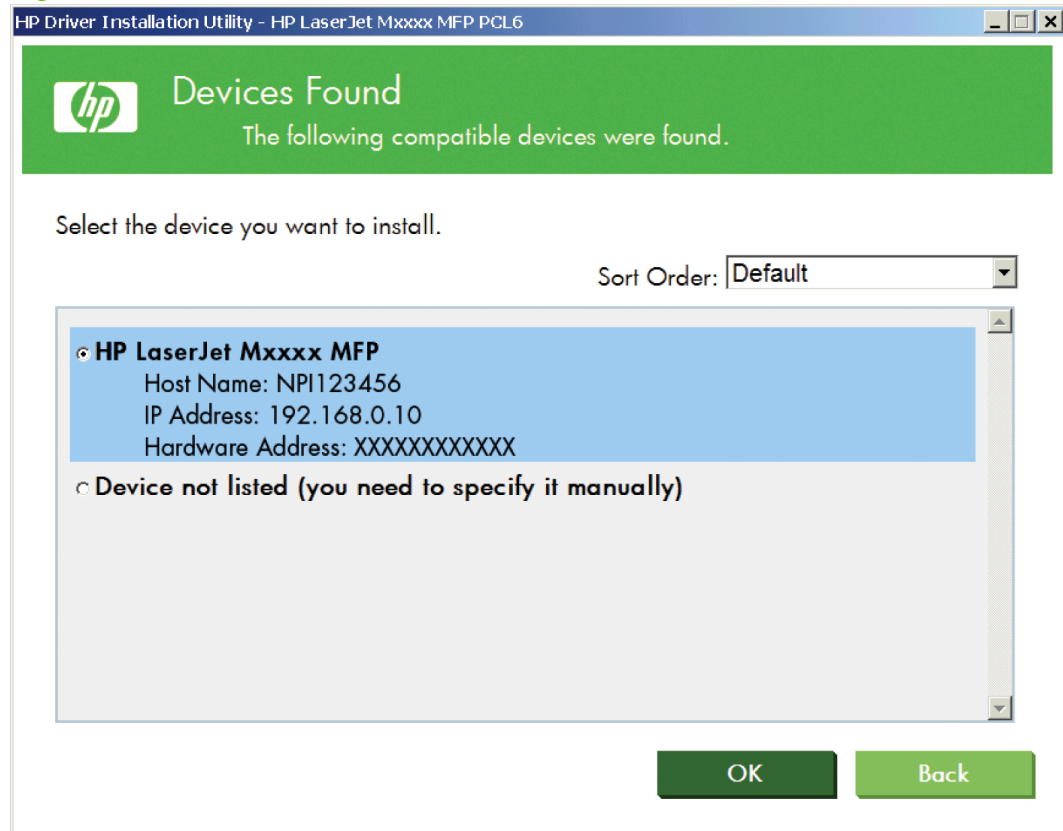
NOTE: If you choose this option, the printer should not be connected to the computer until prompted during the installation process.

-or-

- **Connect via the network:** Select this option if the product will be connected to the computer using a network cable.
 - If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
 - If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

7. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-12 Software Installation — Devices Found screen



8. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-13 Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP LaserJet Mxxxxx MFP PCL6

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

☒ Host Name

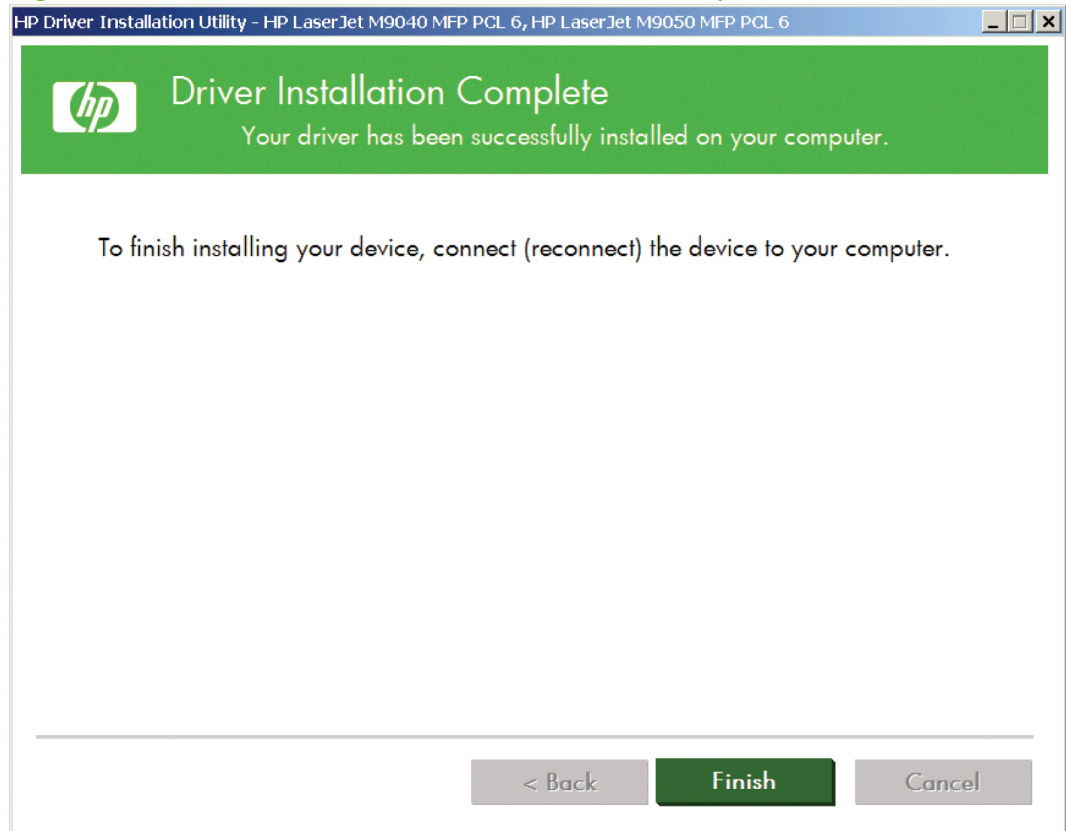
☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

9. Depending on the installation method, one of the following dialog boxes appears at the conclusion of the software installation:
- If you selected the **Connect directly to the computer** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

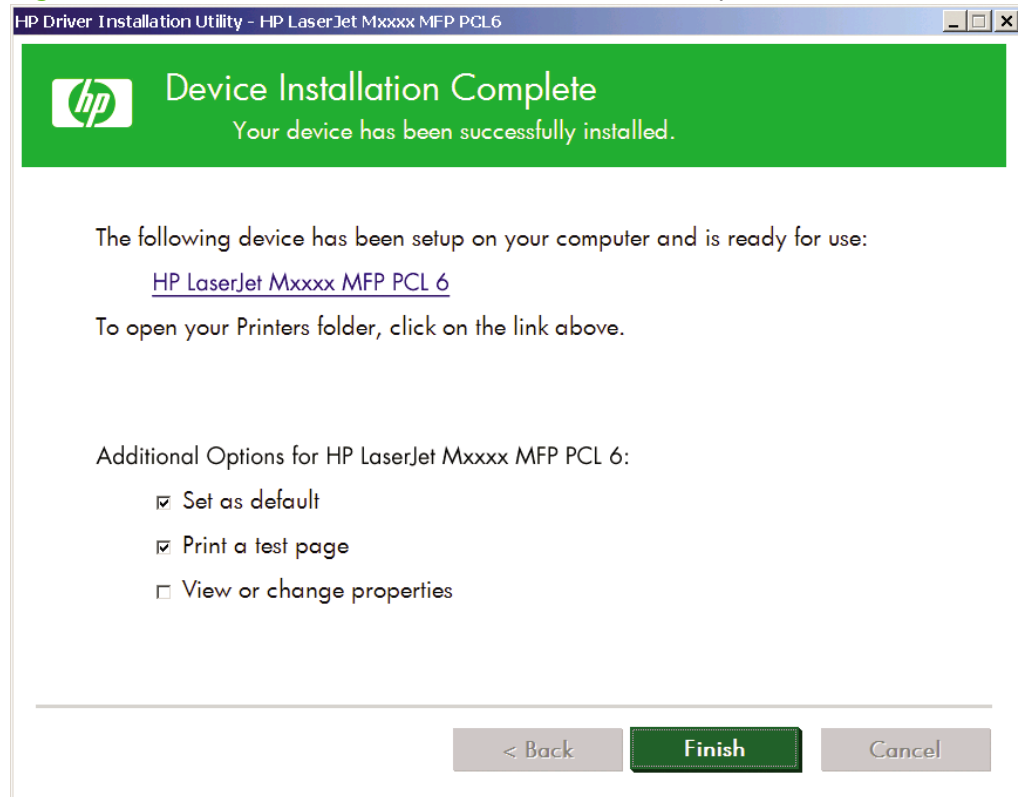
Figure 3-14 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1



- If you selected the **Connect via the network** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. You can make this your default product by selecting the **Set as default** check box, send a test page to the product by selecting the **Print a test page** check box, or gain access to the printer driver by selecting the **View or change properties** check box.

Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

Figure 3-15 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2



Install the printer driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard



NOTE: You can return to the previous screen by clicking the < **Back** button, or exit the Add Printer Wizard by clicking the **Cancel** button.

Select one of the following three options to install The printer driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard:

- **Use an existing port for a direct connection:** The product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists.
- **Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection:** The product is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port does not exist.
- **Print server connection:** The product is connected via the network using a print server.

Use an existing port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or when printing via the network without using a print server:

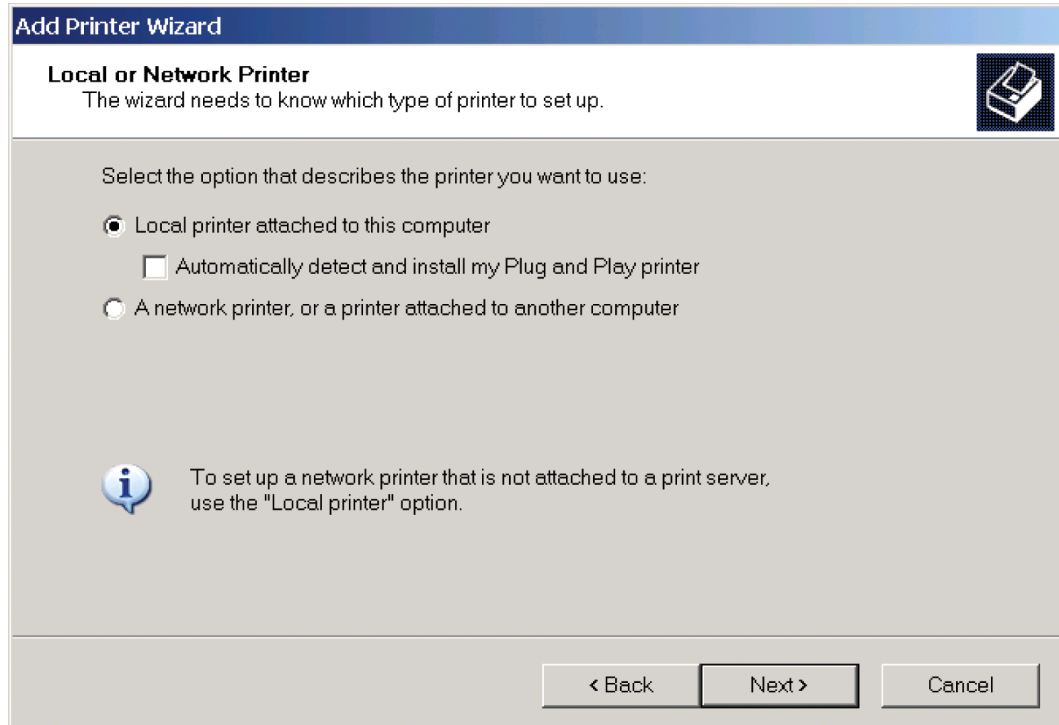
1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then
Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.
-or-
Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.
-or-
Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.
-or-
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.
2. Click the **Add a printer** option. The Add Printer Wizard opens.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

4. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect an install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button, the computer will automatically install the printer driver.

NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next >** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

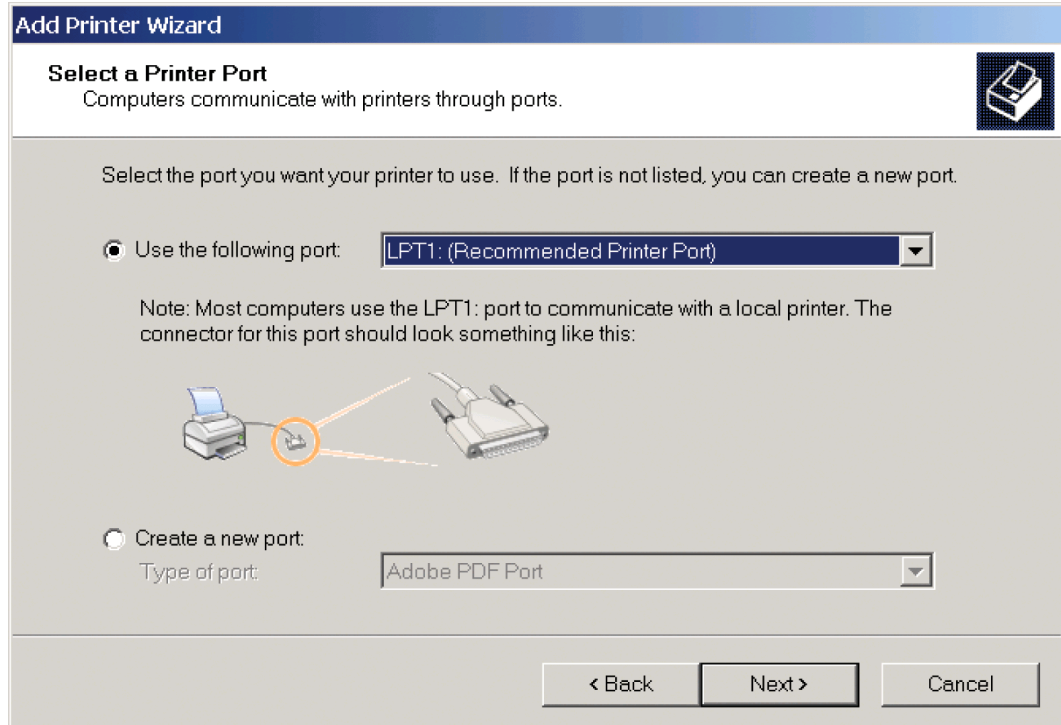
Figure 3-16 Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen



5. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists, select the **Use the following port** option, select the product name, print path, or IP address of the product from the **Use the following port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 96](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

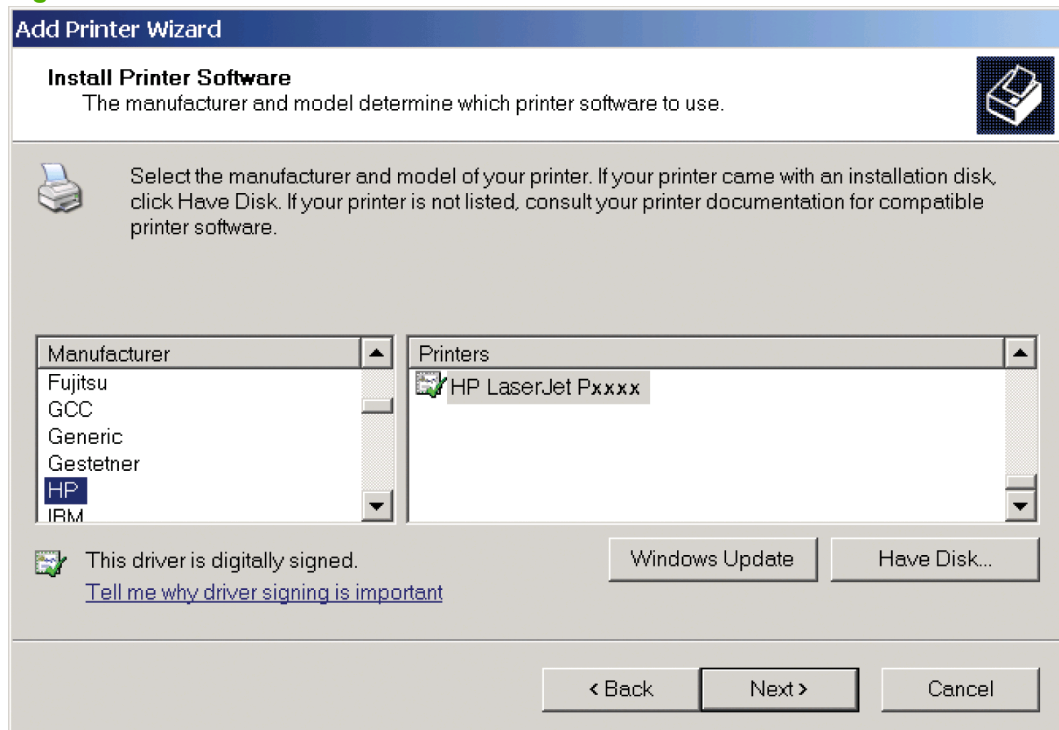
Figure 3-17 Add Printer Wizard — Select a Printer Port screen



6. (Optional) Click the **Windows Update** button to display a list of drivers that can be downloaded from the Microsoft Windows Update Web site.

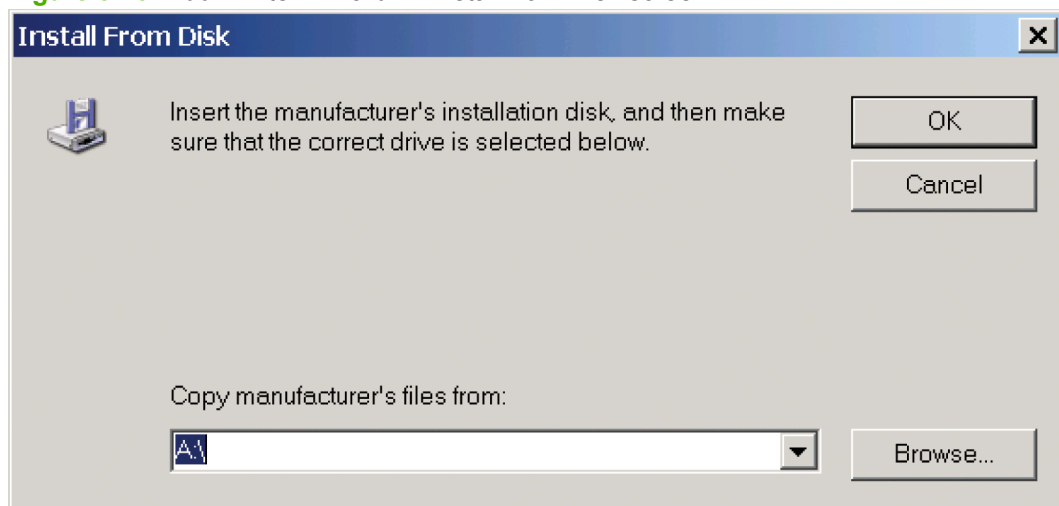
If the appropriate model of HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series is already listed, select it and click the **Next >** button. If the product is not listed, click the **Have Disk** button to continue to the **Install From Disk** screen.

Figure 3-18 Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software screen



7. If the correct path to the CD-ROM drive is listed in the **Copy manufacturer's files from** text box, click the **OK** button. If not, click the **Browse** button to continue to the **Locate File** screen.

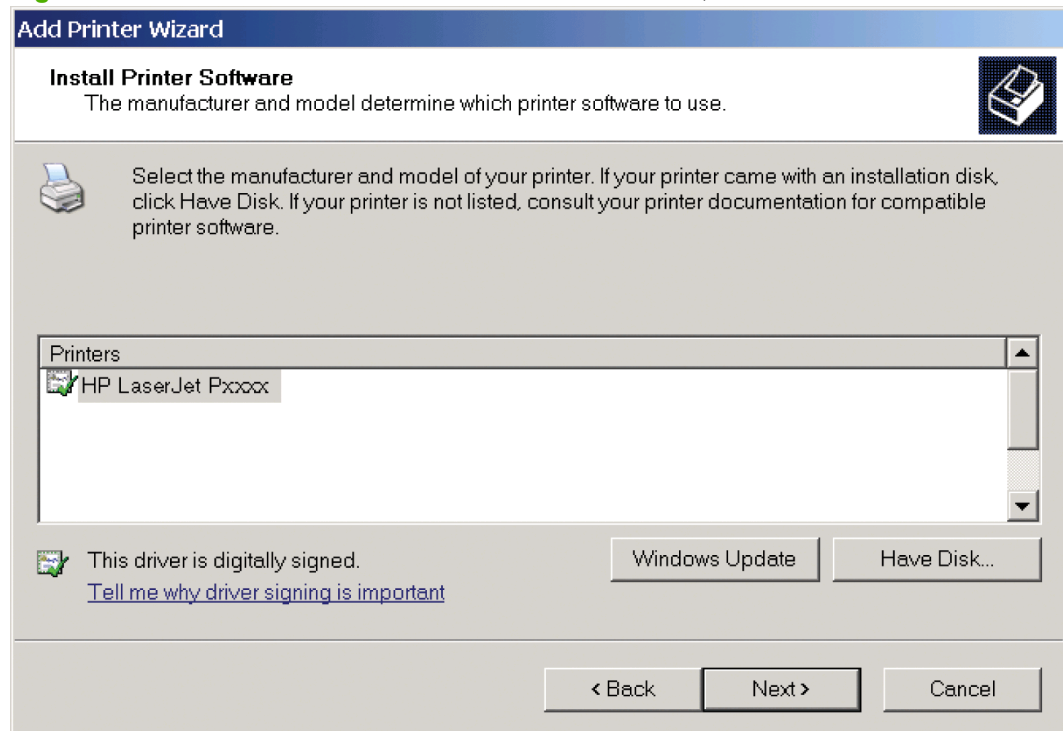
Figure 3-19 Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen



8. Navigate to your CD-ROM drive, and then select the .INF file for your product.
9. Click the **OK** button to continue to the **Install Printer Software** screen.

10. Select the appropriate model of HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series from the list and click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Name Your Printer** screen.

Figure 3-20 Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software, screen 2

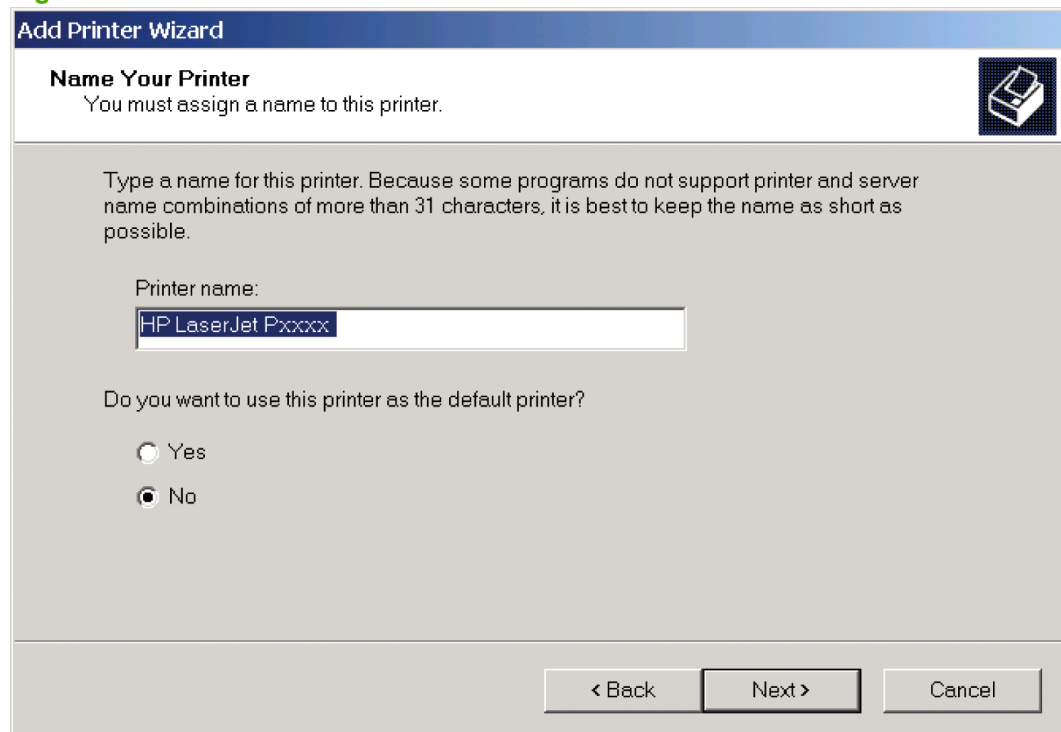


11. You can either type a name for the product in the **Printer name** text box or use the default name provided.

Select the **Yes** option to use this printer as the default printer or select the **No** option to keep the existing product as the default printer.

Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Printer Sharing** screen.

Figure 3-21 Add Printer Wizard — Name Your Printer screen

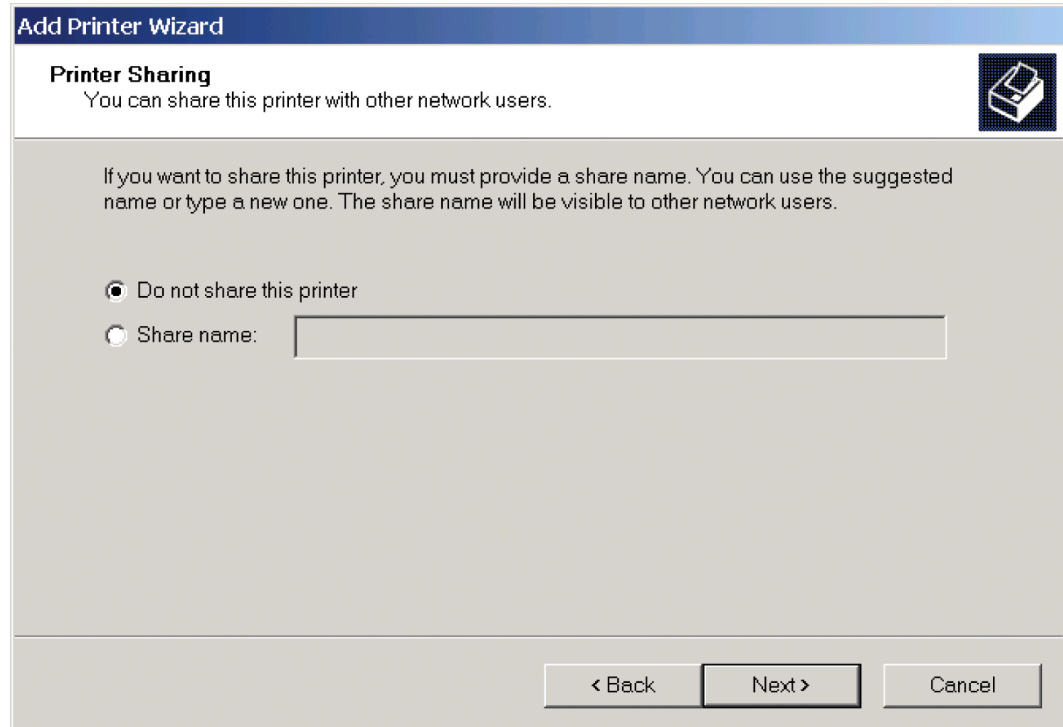


The screenshot shows the 'Name Your Printer' screen of the 'Add Printer Wizard'. The title bar reads 'Add Printer Wizard'. Below the title bar, the section is titled 'Name Your Printer' with a printer icon. The text says 'You must assign a name to this printer.' Below this, a message states: 'Type a name for this printer. Because some programs do not support printer and server name combinations of more than 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as possible.' There is a text box labeled 'Printer name:' containing the text 'HP LaserJet Pxxxx'. Below the text box, the question 'Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?' is followed by two radio buttons: 'Yes' (unselected) and 'No' (selected). At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

12. Select either the **Do not share this printer** option, or select the **Share name:** option and type share name, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Print Test Page** screen.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see either [Microsoft Windows Sharing \(peer-to-peer networking\) on page 103](#) or [Microsoft Point and Print on page 105](#).

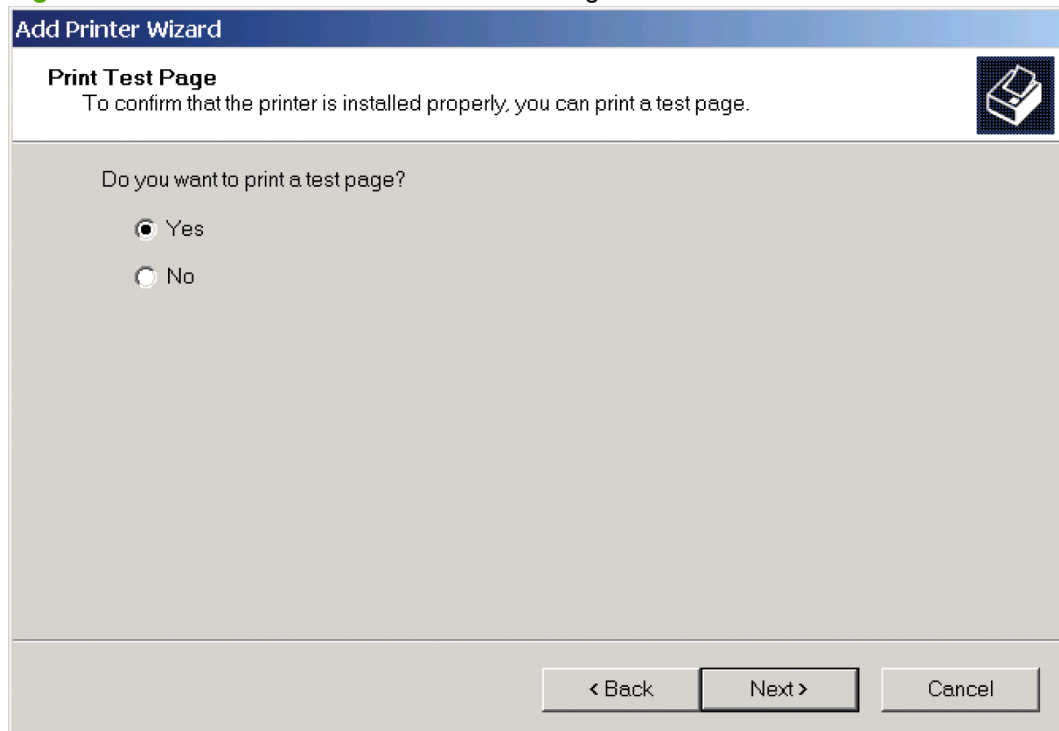
Figure 3-22 Add Printer Wizard — Printer Sharing screen



13. Select the **Yes** option if you want to print a test page after the software is installed. Select the **No** option if you do not want to print a test page after the software is installed.

Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

Figure 3-23 Add Printer Wizard — Print Test Page screen



14. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network without using a print server and a printer port does not exist:

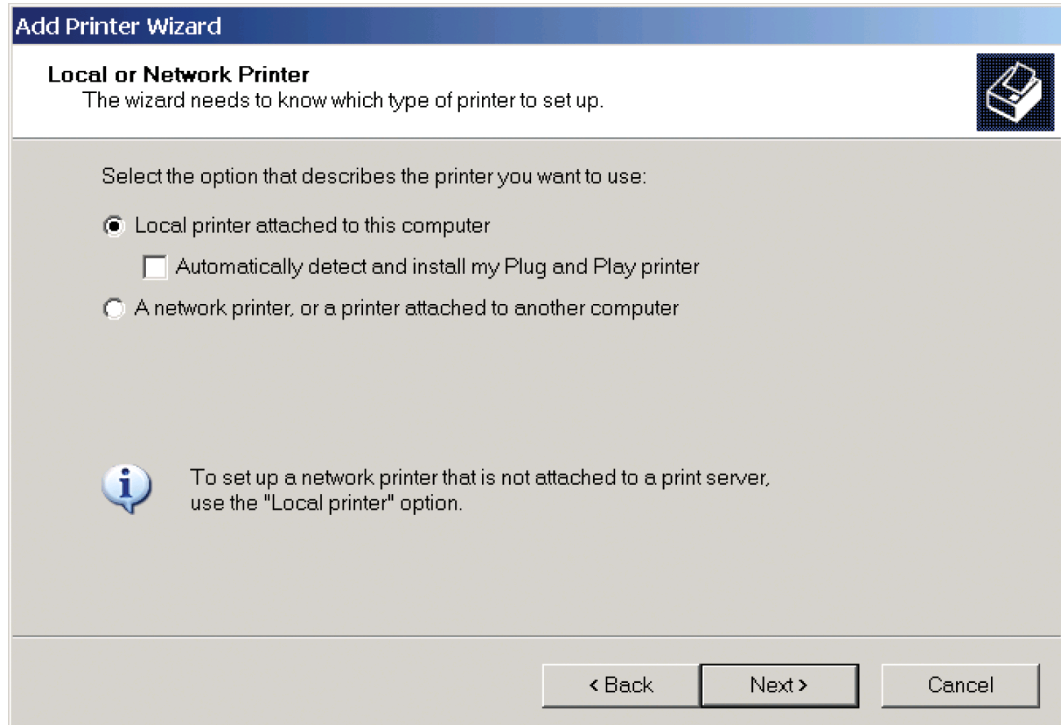
1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then
Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.
-or-
Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.
-or-
Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.
-or-
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.
2. Click the **Add a printer** option on the **Printer Tasks** pane.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

4. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button, the computer will automatically install the printer driver.

NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next >** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

Figure 3-24 Local or Network Printer screen



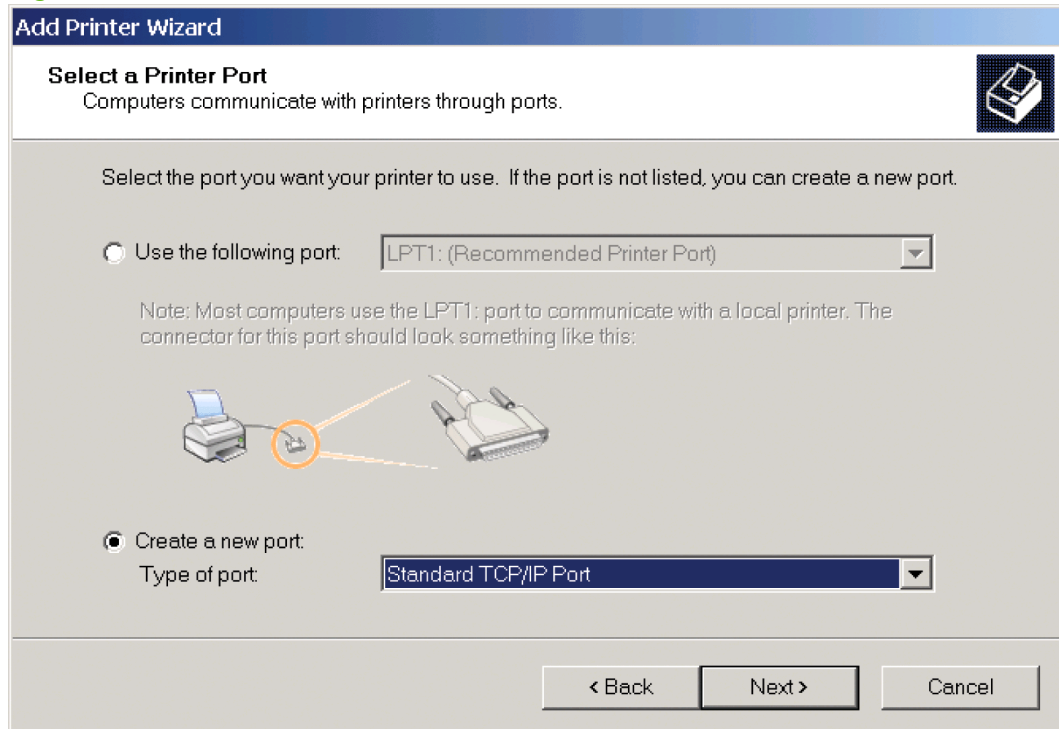
5. If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, select the **Create a new port** option.

- If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option appears in the **Type of port** drop-down list, select this option, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** dialog box appears.
- If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option does not appear in the **Type of port** drop-down list, select the **Standard TCP/IP Port** option from the **Type of port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** The **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option provides additional network functionality and is the recommended printer port for HP products.

NOTE: If the printer port already appears in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 89](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

Figure 3-25 Select a Printer Port screen



6. Click the **Next >** button.

Figure 3-26 Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port screen

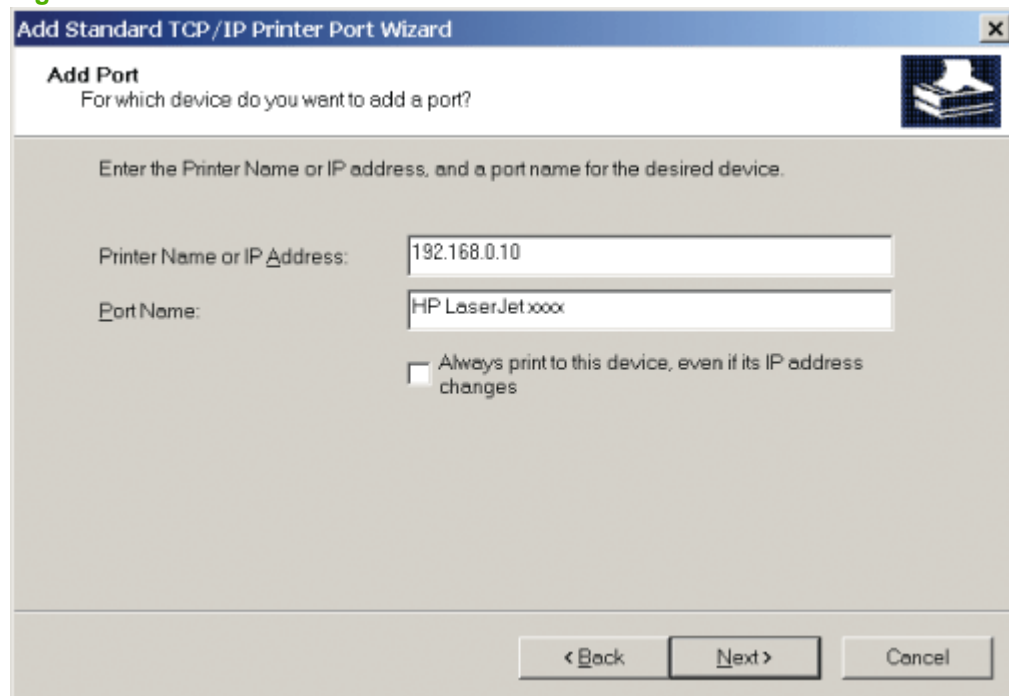


7. Type the product's IP address or host name in the **Printer Name or IP Address** text box, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** The default port name is the name that you typed in the **Printer Name or IP Address** text box. You can change this name by typing a new name in the **Port Name** text box.

NOTE: The **Always print to this device, even if its IP address changes** check box is only available if you select the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option from the **Select a Printer Port** dialog box. This feature allows the computer to communicate with the product using the MAC address of the network card rather than the IP address.

Figure 3-27 Add Port screen



8. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Print sever connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network using a print server:

1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then

Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.

-or-

Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.

-or-

Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.

-or-

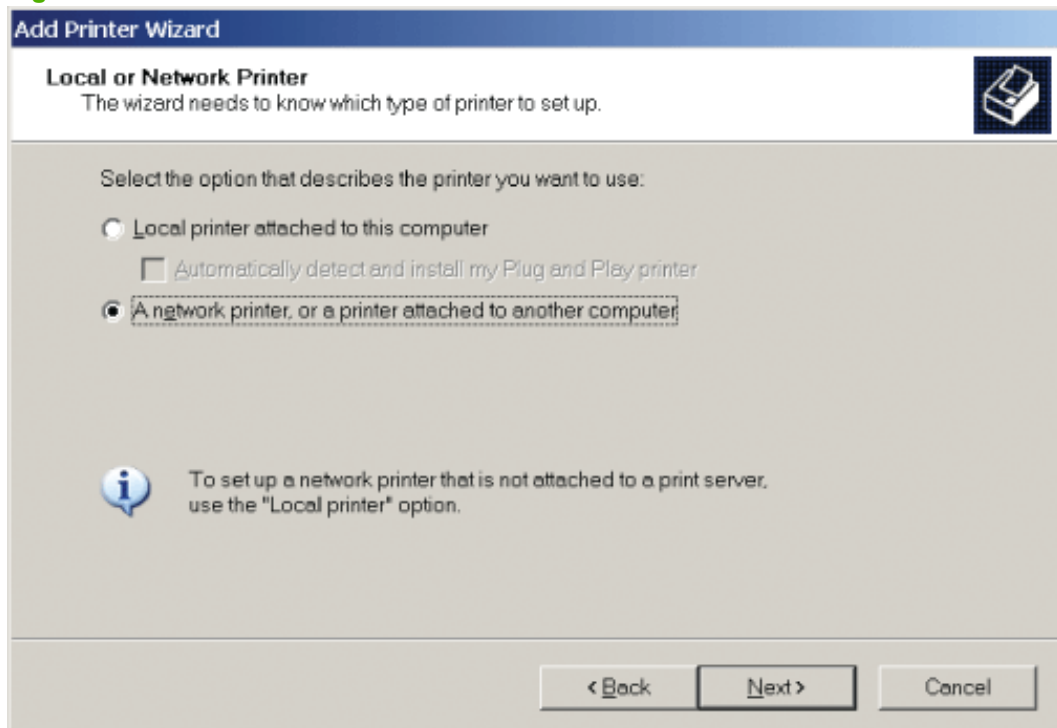
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.

2. Click the **Add a printer** option. The Add Printer Wizard opens.

3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.
4. If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

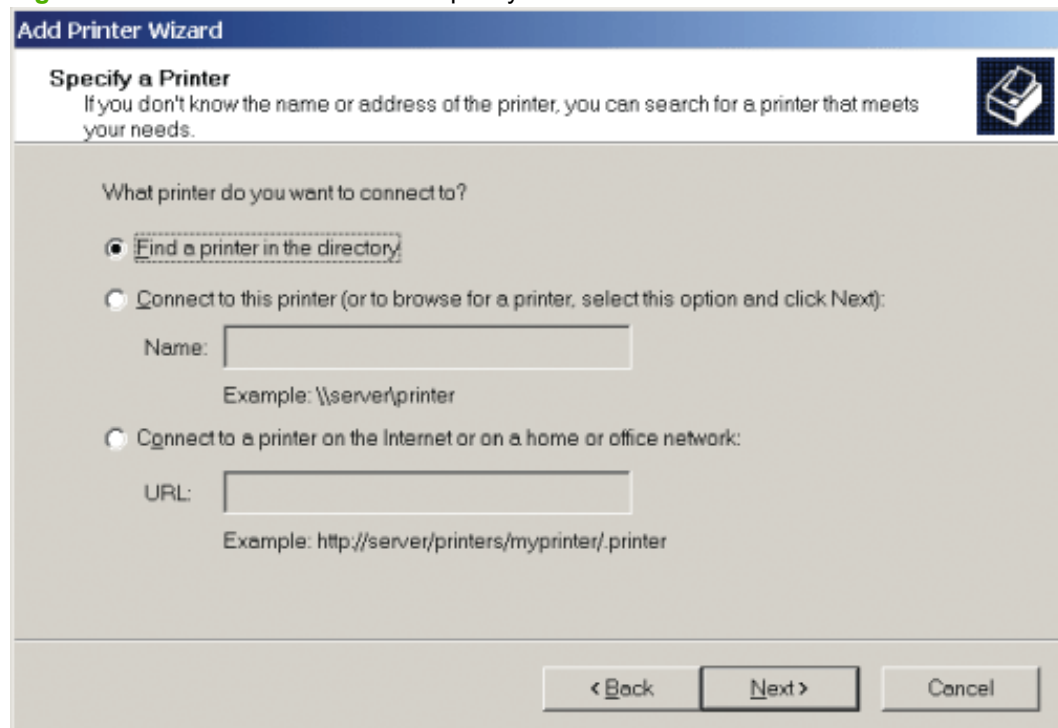
 **NOTE:** If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button. You can also select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button to have the computer automatically install the printer driver. For detailed installation instructions, see either [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 89](#) or see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 96](#).

Figure 3-28 Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen



5. Select either the **Find a printer in the directory** option, the **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)** option, or the **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

Figure 3-29 Add Printer Wizard — Specify A Printer screen



If you select the **Find a printer in the directory** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Find Printers** dialog box.

If you select the **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

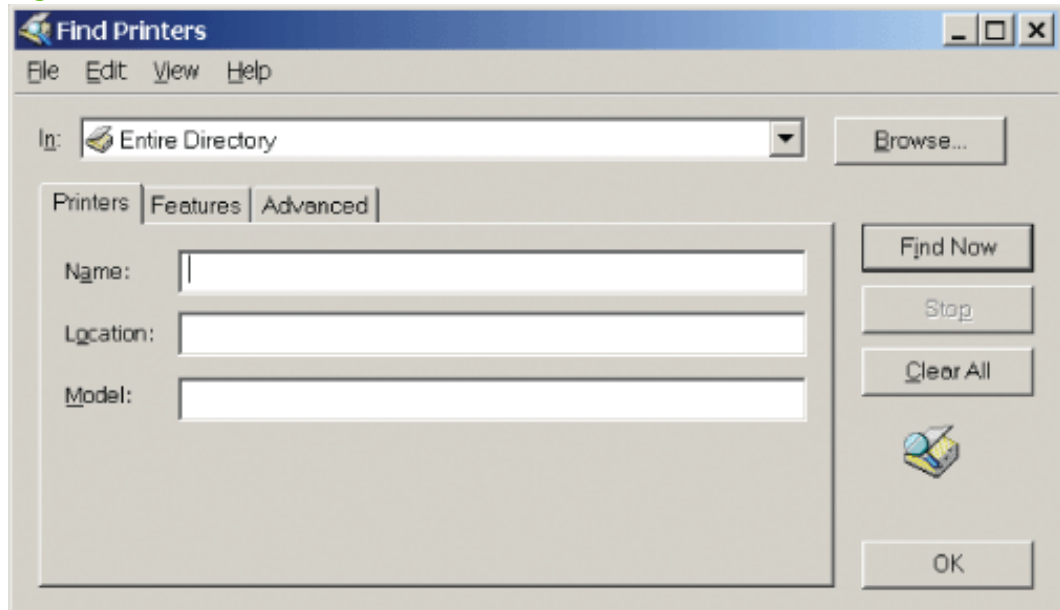
If you select the **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

Select one of the following options:

a. (Find a printer in the directory option only)

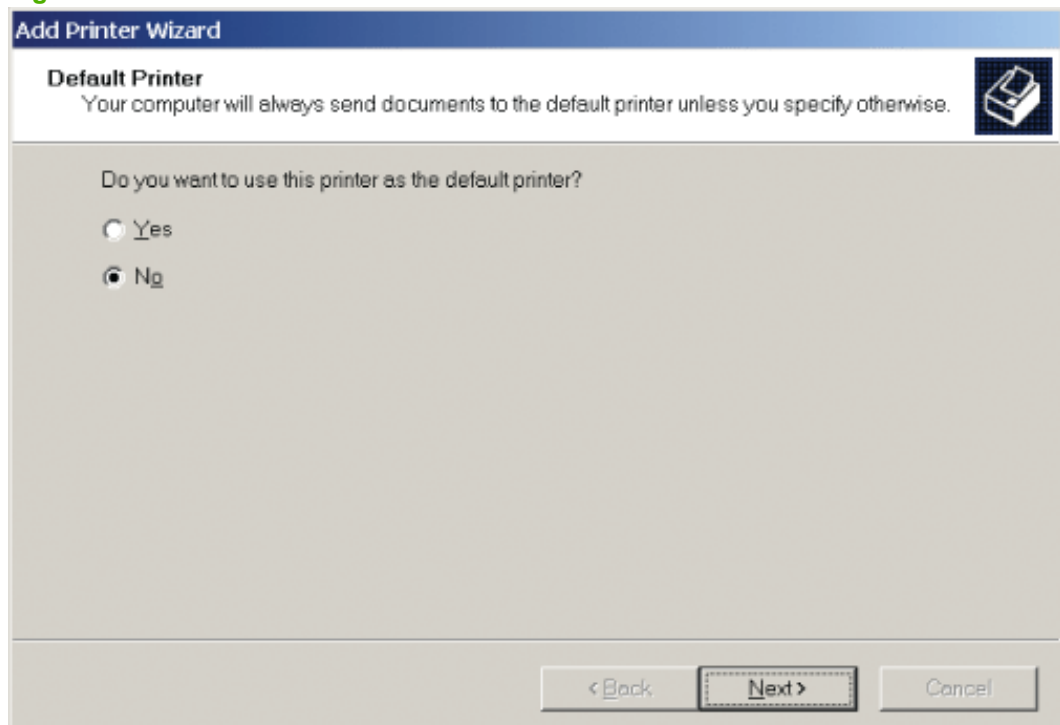
Specify search attributes to find your product on the network, and then click the **Find Now** button to search the specified location for your product. Once the search has completed, select the product, and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Default Printer** dialog box.

Figure 3-30 Add Printer Wizard — Find Printers screen



Select either the **Yes** option to use this printer as the default printer, or select the **No** option to keep the existing product as the default printer, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

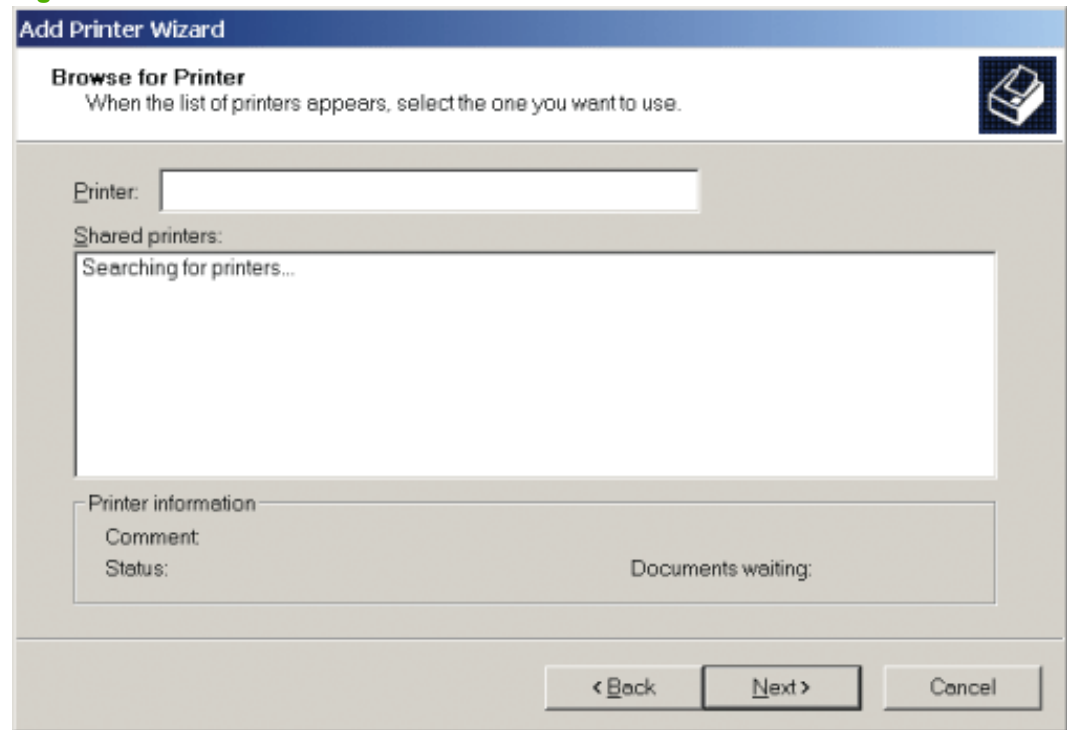
Figure 3-31 Add Printer Wizard — Default Printer screen



- b. (Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next) option only)

Specify the print path for the product and then click the **Next >** button. The computer will search the network for shared products. Select the product from the list and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

Figure 3-32 Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen



- c. (Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network option only)

Type the URL for the product, and then click the **Next >** button. Follow the onscreen instructions to connect to the product, and then you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

6. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Microsoft Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking)

Windows Sharing (peer-to-peer networking) is a feature of the Microsoft operating system that allows network computers that are not directly connected to the product to print to the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series. When using Windows sharing, the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printer driver must be installed and configured on both the host computer as well as any network computers that will print to the product.

 **NOTE:** Windows Sharing is a feature of Microsoft operating systems, not of HP printer drivers. If these procedures are not successful, or for more information about peer-to-peer networking procedures, contact Microsoft at the following Web site:

www.microsoft.com

The link above will take you outside the Hewlett-Packard Web site. HP does not control and is not responsible for information outside of the HP Web site.

Setting up the host computer running Windows 2000

1. Click the **Start** button, click the **Settings** option, and then click **Printers** option.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for the product you want to share, and then click the **Sharing** option.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share As** option, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** text box. Click the **OK** button.

Setting up the host computer running Windows XP

1. On the **Start** menu, click one of the following options:
Printers and Faxes (Windows XP Professional)

-or-
Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Windows XP Home)
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for the product you want to share, and then click the **Sharing** option.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share this printer** option, and then type a name for the product in the **Share Name** text box. Click the **OK** button.
4. Click the **Ports** tab. Clear the **Enable bidirectional support** check box, and then click the **OK** button.

Setting up client computers running Windows 2000

1. Click the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then click the **Printers** option.
2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon to open the **Add Printer Wizard**.
3. Click the **Next** button to start the wizard.
4. Click the **Network Printer** option, and then click the **Next** button.
5. Type in the path and share name of the product to which you want to connect.

-or-
Click the **Browse** button and navigate to find the product to which you want to connect.

Click the **Next** button.
6. Select either the **Yes** or **No** option when asked if you want to use this product as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click the **Next** button.
7. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer Wizard**.



NOTE: You might need to use the product software CD to complete the printer driver installations.

Setting up client computers running Windows XP

1. On the **Start** menu, click one of the following options:
Printers and Faxes (Windows XP Professional)

-or-
Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Windows XP Home)
2. On the left-hand column, under **Printer Tasks**, click the **Add a printer** option to open the **Add Printer Wizard**.
3. Click the **Next** button to start the wizard.
4. Click the **A network printer or a printer attached to another computer** option, and then click the **Next** button.
5. Type in the path and share name of the product to which you want to connect.

-or-
Click the **Browse** button and navigate to find the product to which you want to connect.

Click the **Next** button.
6. Click either the **Yes** or **No** option when asked if you want to use this product as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click the **Next** button.
7. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer Wizard**.

Microsoft Point and Print

Microsoft Point and Print is a two-step driver installation process that allows network computers to print via a print server rather than printing directly to a product. Point and Print is similar to Window Sharing except that the printer driver is installed on a network print server rather than a client directly connected to the product. The first step is to install a shared driver on a network print server. The second step is to "point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the printer driver.

 **NOTE:** Point and Print is a feature of Microsoft operating systems, not of HP printer drivers. If these procedures are not successful, or for more information about Point and Print networking procedures, contact Microsoft at the following Web site:

www.microsoft.com

The link above will take you outside the Hewlett-Packard Web site. HP does not control and is not responsible for information outside of the HP Web site.

Use the MFP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer via the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 300, which is standard on the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series printers, is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, see the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be downloaded from www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory300, and then clicking the **Manuals** option from the left navigation bar. It is also available on the User CD.

Download the HP Send Fax

The HP Send Fax Driver is on the Admin CD under **Install**. The Admin CD is the primary install method for the HP Send Fax Driver; alternatively, you can also download the HP Send Fax Driver by using the following procedure:

1. Go to www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory300, and then click the **Download drivers and software** option from the left navigation bar.
2. In the **Select operating system** pane, click the appropriate operating system.
3. In the Driver table that appears, click **Download >>** next to the MFP Send Fax driver.
4. In the **File Download** dialog box that opens, click the **Save** button.
5. In the **File Name** text box on the **Save As** window that opens, type the location on your computer where you want to save the HP Easy Printer Care file.
6. Click the **Save** button.
7. After the file has been downloaded, close the **File Download** dialog box if necessary.

Install the HP Send Fax Driver

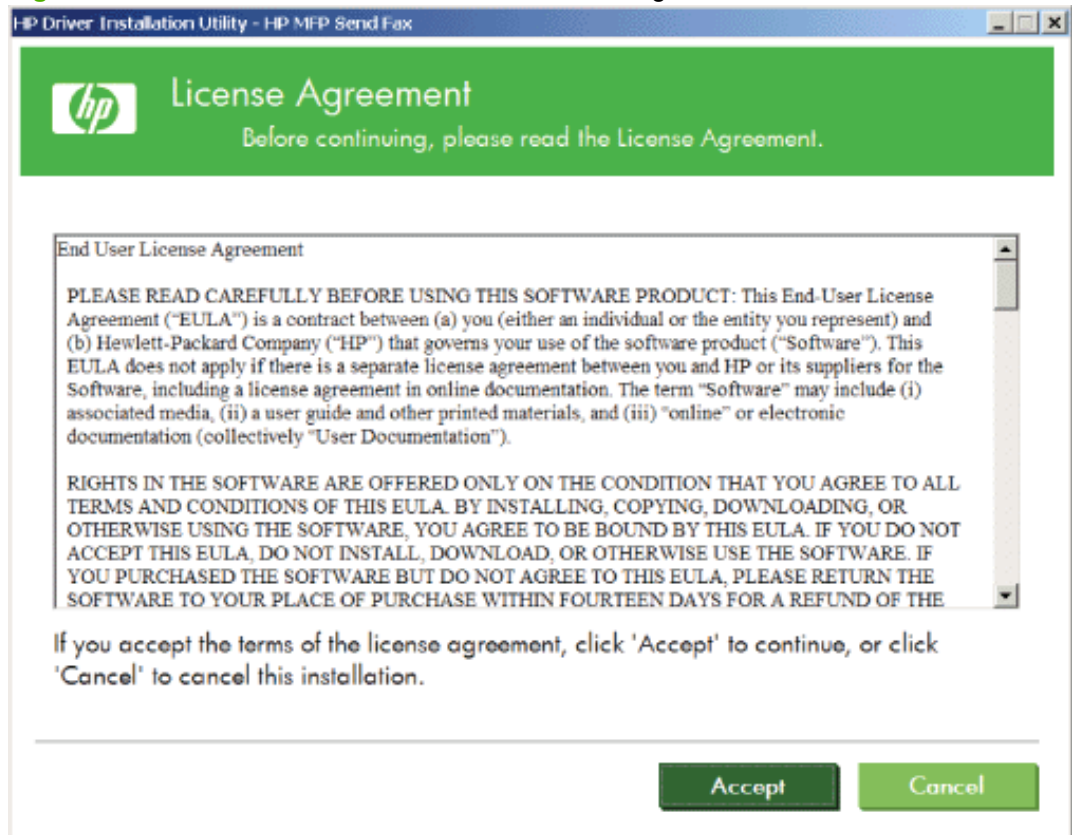
The HP Easy Printer Care can be installed using either the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) or the Windows Add Printer Wizard.

HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

To install the HP Send Fax Driver by using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU), use the following steps:

1. In Windows Explorer, double-click the downloaded HP Send Fax Driver executable file to extract the driver files.
2. Browse to the location of the HP Send Fax Driver executable file, and then click the **HPDIU.EXE** file. The HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) opens.
3. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-33 Send Fax Driver Installation — License Agreement screen



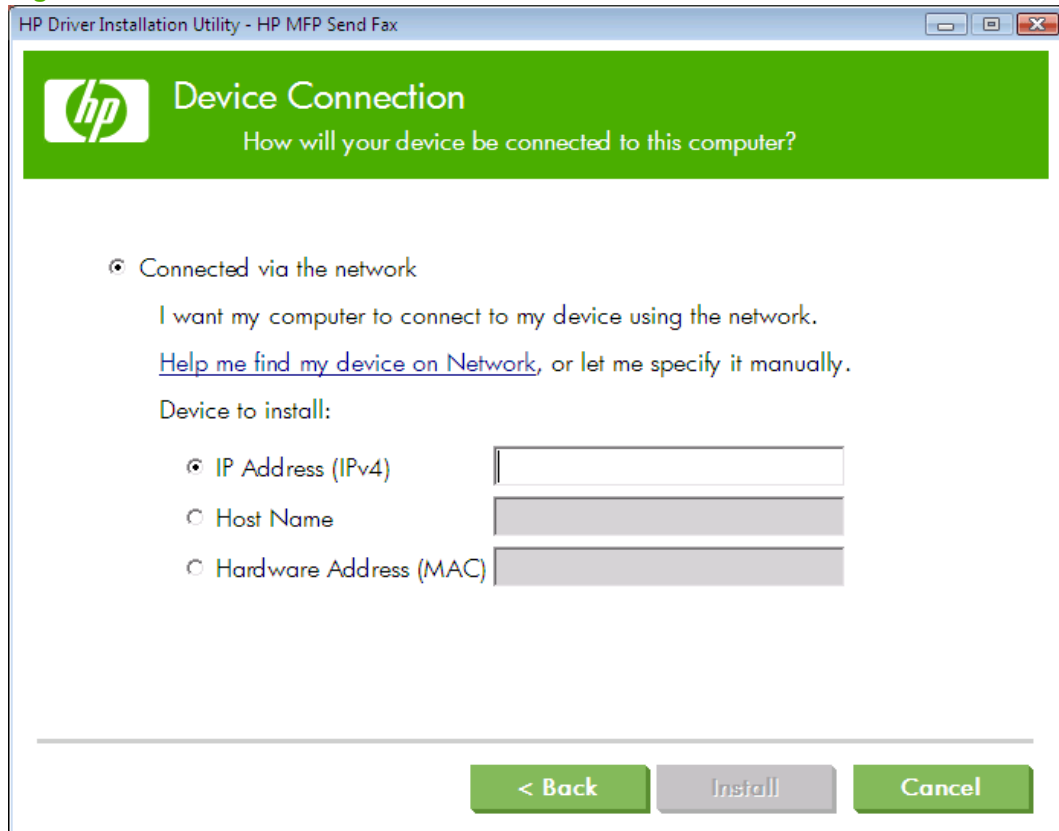
4. Select the **Connect via the network** option.
 - If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
 - If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

 **NOTE:** The product name is HP MFP Send Fax when the HP Send Fax Driver is installed on a local printer.

If you select **Connect via the network** option, some features, such as fax preview, might not be available.

The HP Send Fax Driver cannot be installed on a product that is connected to the computer via a serial or parallel port. It must be on a network.

Figure 3-34 Send Fax Driver Installation — Device Connection screen



HP Driver Installation Utility - HP MFP Send Fax

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected via the network

I want my computer to connect to my device using the network.
[Help me find my device on Network](#), or let me specify it manually.

Device to install:

☒ IP Address (IPv4)

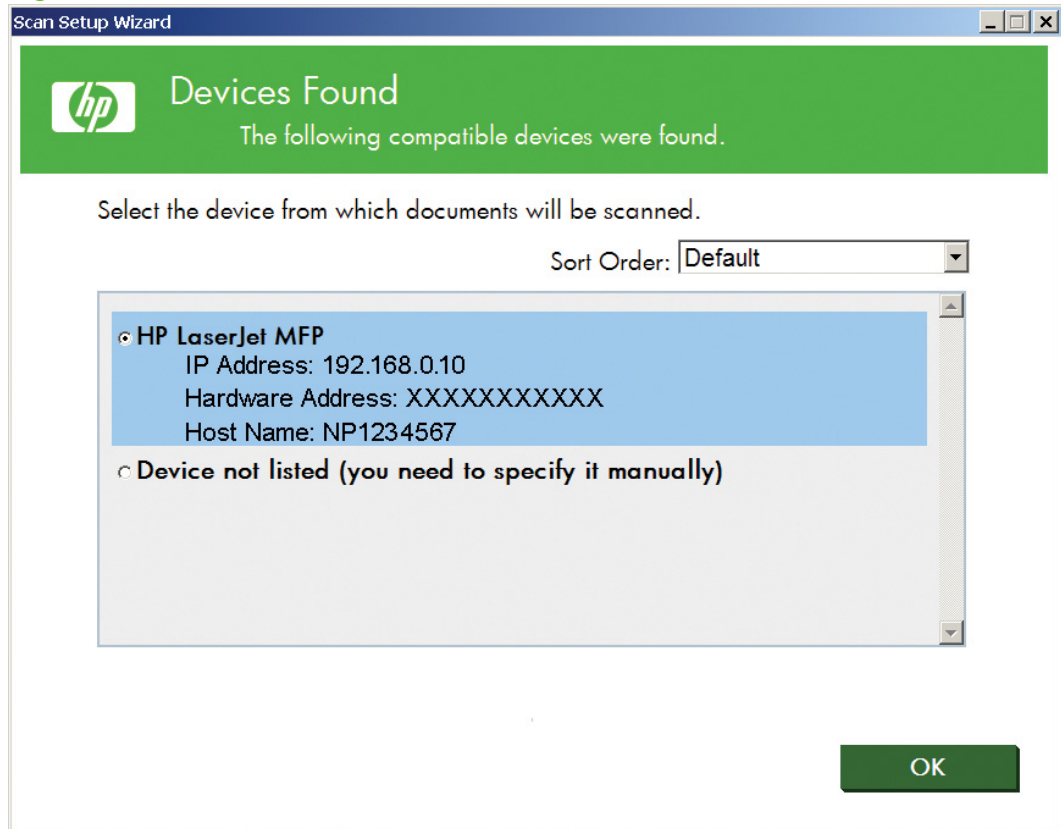
☐ Host Name

☐ Hardware Address (MAC)

< Back Install Cancel

5. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install, and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-35 Send Fax Driver Installation — Devices Found screen



6. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-36 Send Fax Driver Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP MFP Send Fax

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected via the network

I want my computer to connect to my device using the network.
[Help me find my device on Network](#), or let me specify it manually.

Device to install:

☒ IP Address (IPv4)

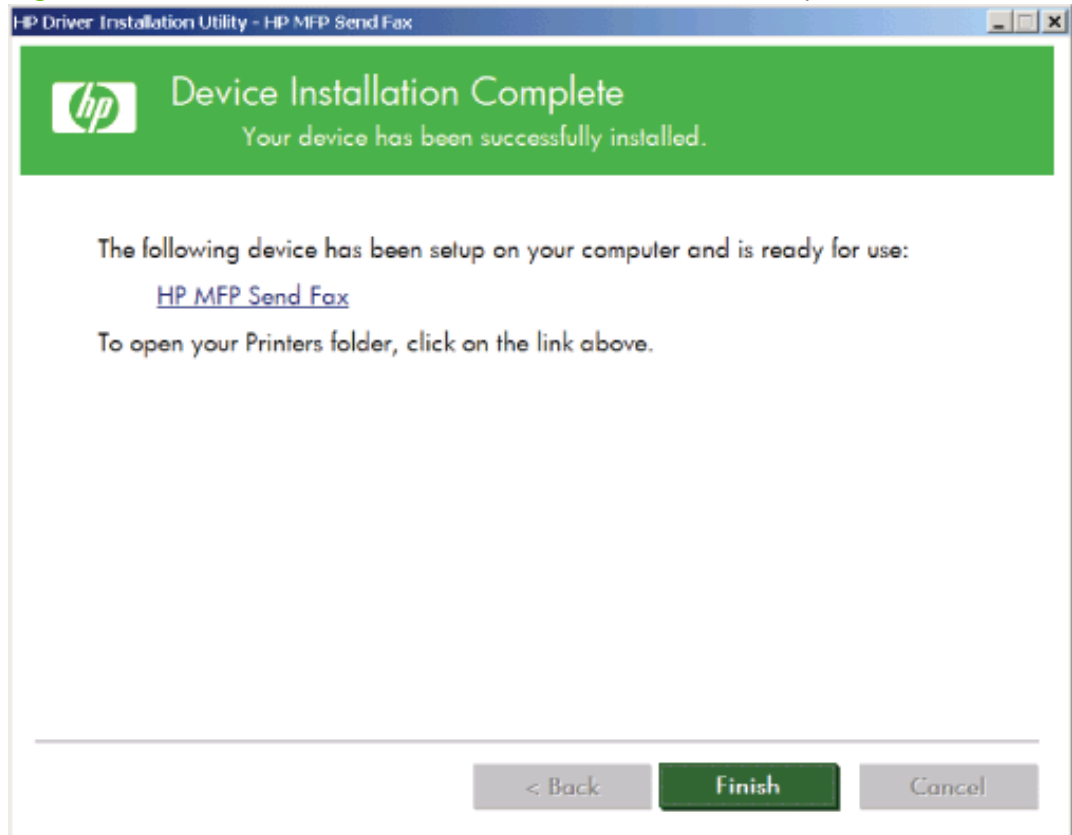
☐ Host Name

☐ Hardware Address (MAC)

< Back Install Cancel

7. The following screen appears once the software is installed. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

Figure 3-37 Send Fax Driver Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen



Add Printer Wizard

To install the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Windows Add Printer Wizard, use the following steps:

1. In Windows Explorer, double-click the downloaded HP Send Fax Driver executable file to extract the driver files.
2. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then
Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.
-or-
Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.
-or-
Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.
-or-
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.
3. Click the **Add a printer** option.
4. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

5. Select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** The printer name is HP MFP Send Fax when the driver is installed on a local printer.

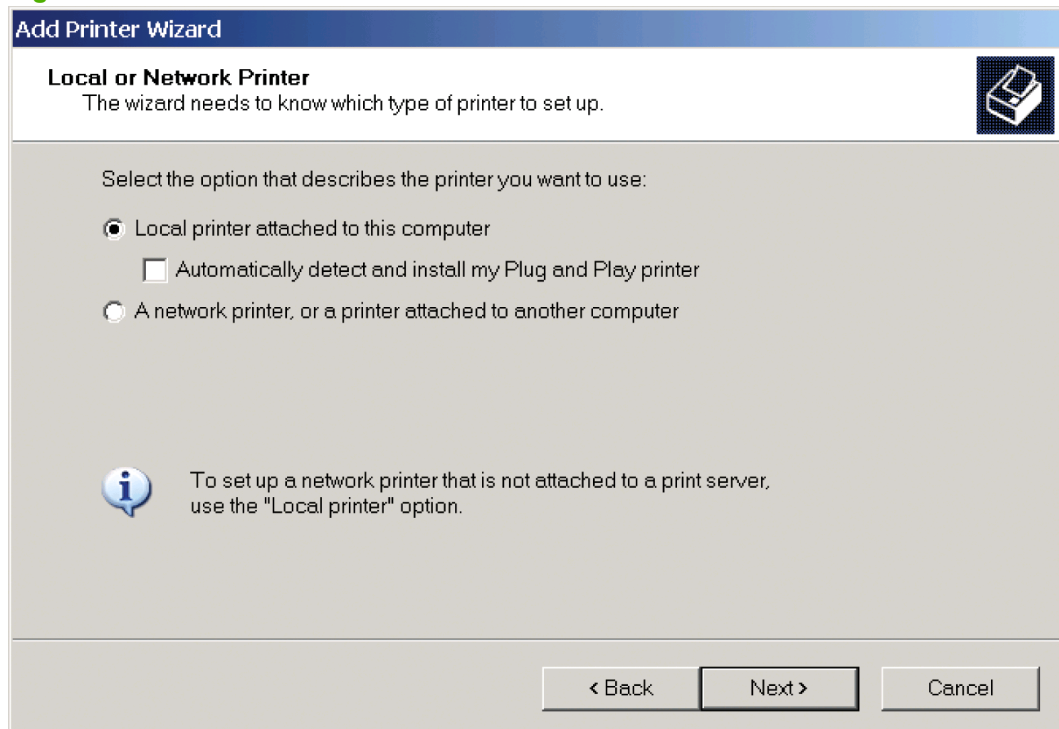
Select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option to install the HP Easy Printer Care on a network printer.

If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 96](#).

If you select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), then the IP address of the computer is required. Some features, such as fax preview, are not available if the driver is installed by using the network printer installation. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

The HP Send Fax Driver cannot be installed on a printer that is connected to the computer via a USB, serial, or parallel port. It must be on a network.

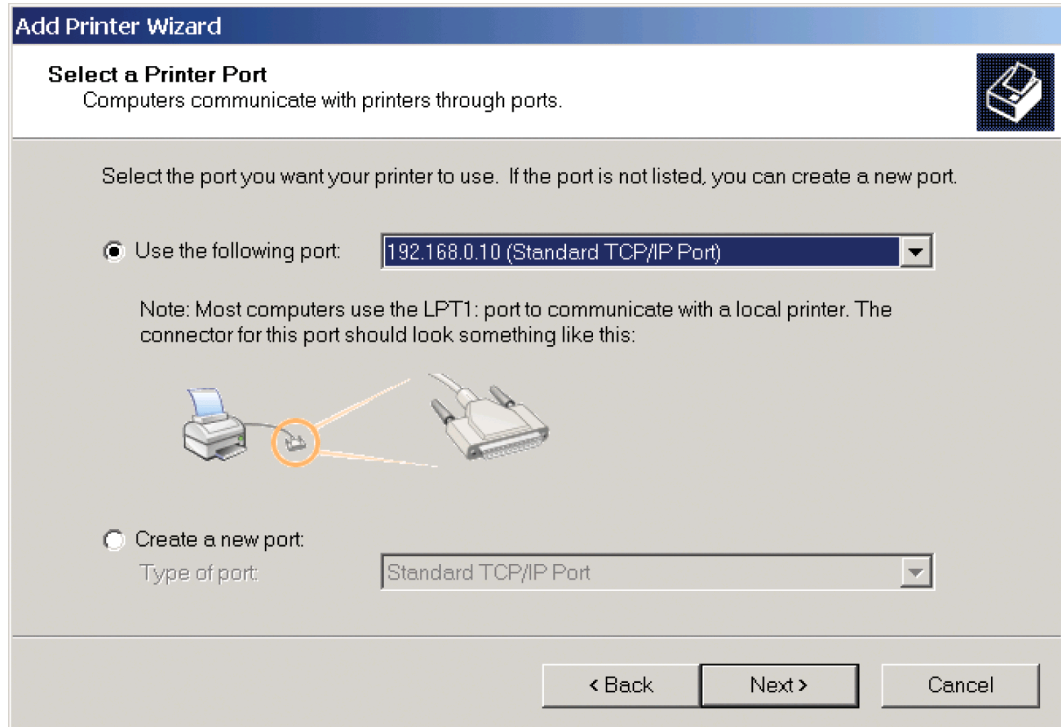
Figure 3-38 Send Fax Driver Installation — Local or Network Printer screen



6. Select the product name, print path, or IP address of the product from the **Use the following port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button.

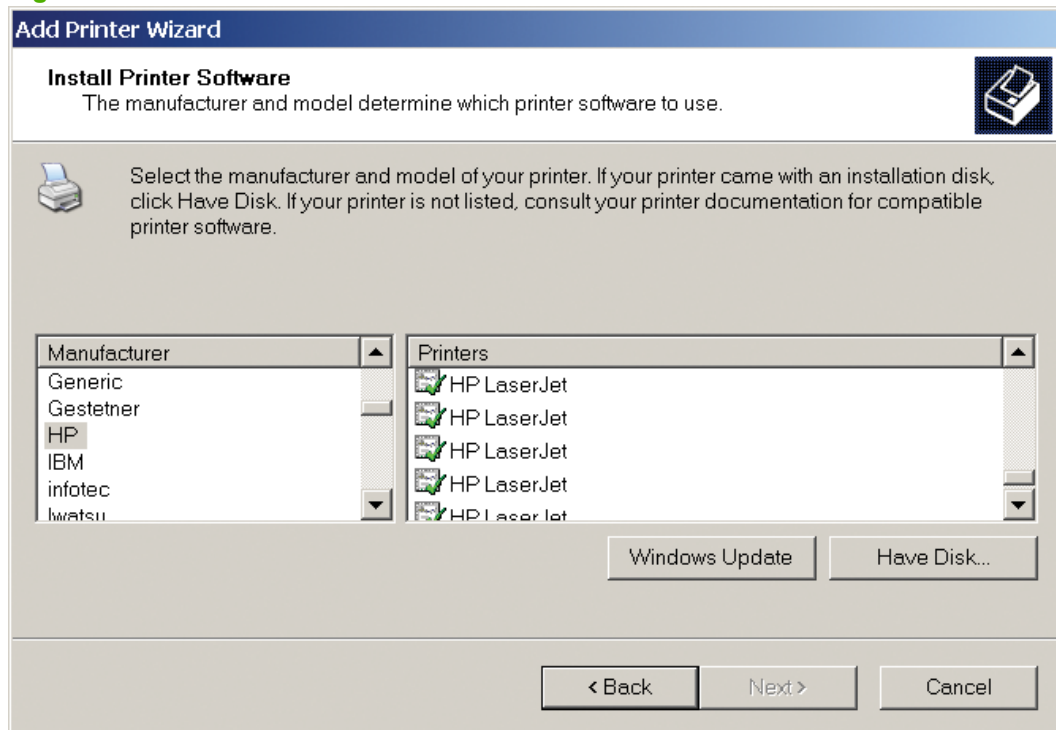
 **NOTE:** If the product name, print path, or IP address of the product is not listed, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 96](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print sever connection on page 99](#).

Figure 3-39 Send Fax Driver Installation — Use the following port screen



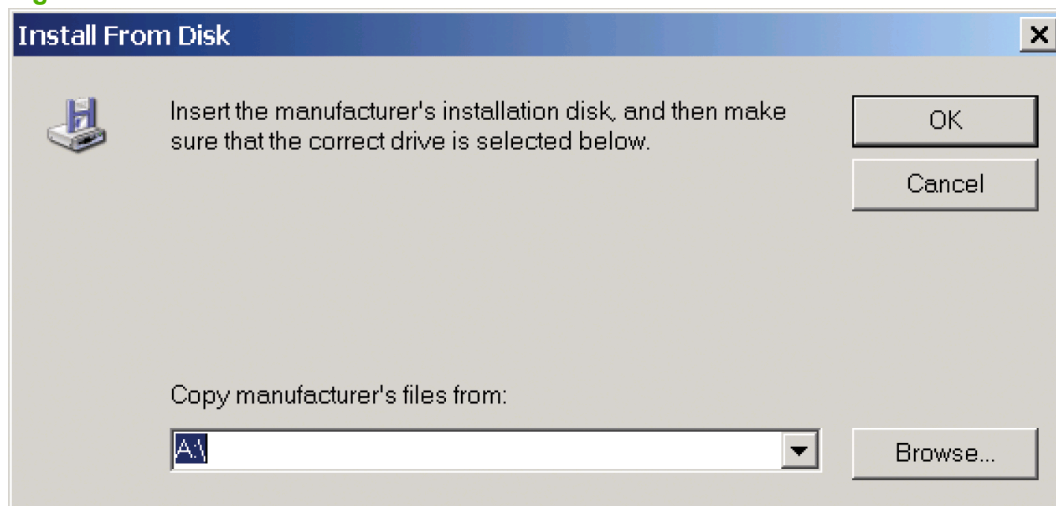
7. Click the **Have Disk** button.

Figure 3-40 Send Fax Driver Installation — Install Printer Software screen



8. Click the **Browse** button.

Figure 3-41 Send Fax Driver Installation — Install From Disk screen



9. Navigate to and select the HP Send Fax Driver .INF file.

 **NOTE:** Different versions of the .INF file are available: a 32-bit version for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista; and a 64-bit version for Windows XP Professional x64, Windows Server 2003 x64, and Windows Vista x64.

The following message displays if you select the wrong version of the file: **The specified location does not contain information about your printer.**

10. Click the **Open** button.
11. Click the **OK** button.
12. Click the **Next** button.
13. Type a name for the driver in the **Printer name** text box, and then click the **Next** button. The default name is HP MFP Send Fax.

Figure 3-42 Send Fax Driver Installation — Name Your Printer screen

Add Printer Wizard

Name Your Printer
You must assign a name to this printer.

Type a name for this printer. Because some programs do not support printer and server name combinations of more than 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as possible.

Printer name:

Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?

☐ Yes
☒ No

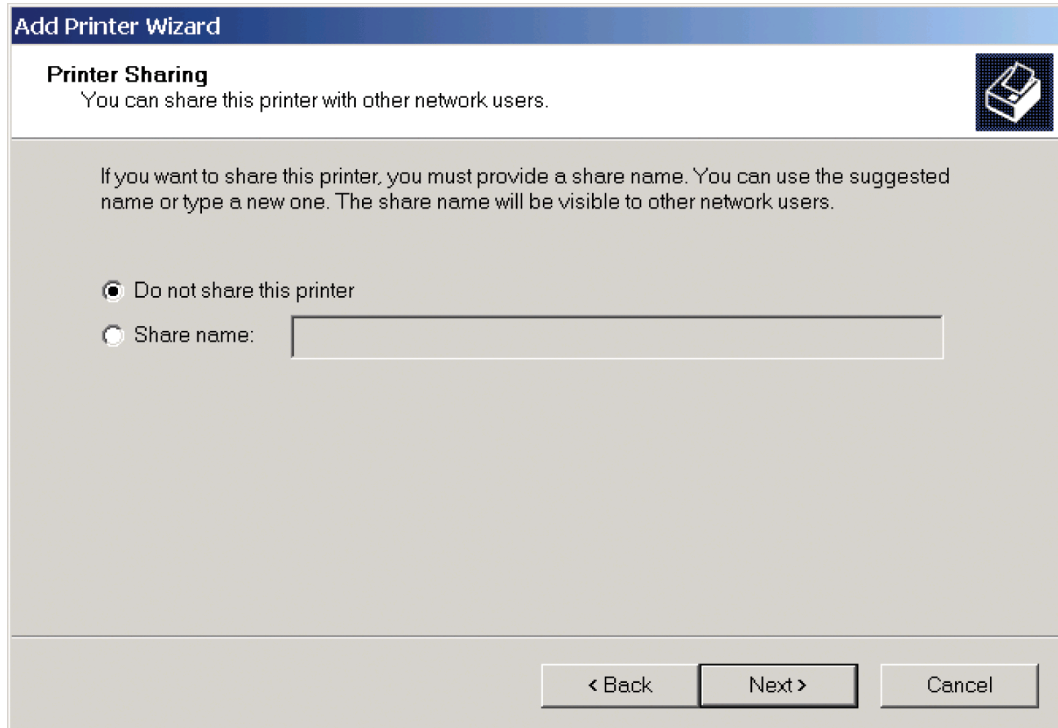
< Back Next > Cancel

14. Select an option, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** You can share the product by selecting the **Share name** option on the **Printer Sharing** window. The HP Send Fax Driver is then available for a Point and Print connection. Some features, such as fax preview, are not available if the driver is accessed by using a Point and Print connection.

For more information, see either [Microsoft Windows Sharing \(peer-to-peer networking\) on page 103](#) or [Microsoft Point and Print on page 105](#).

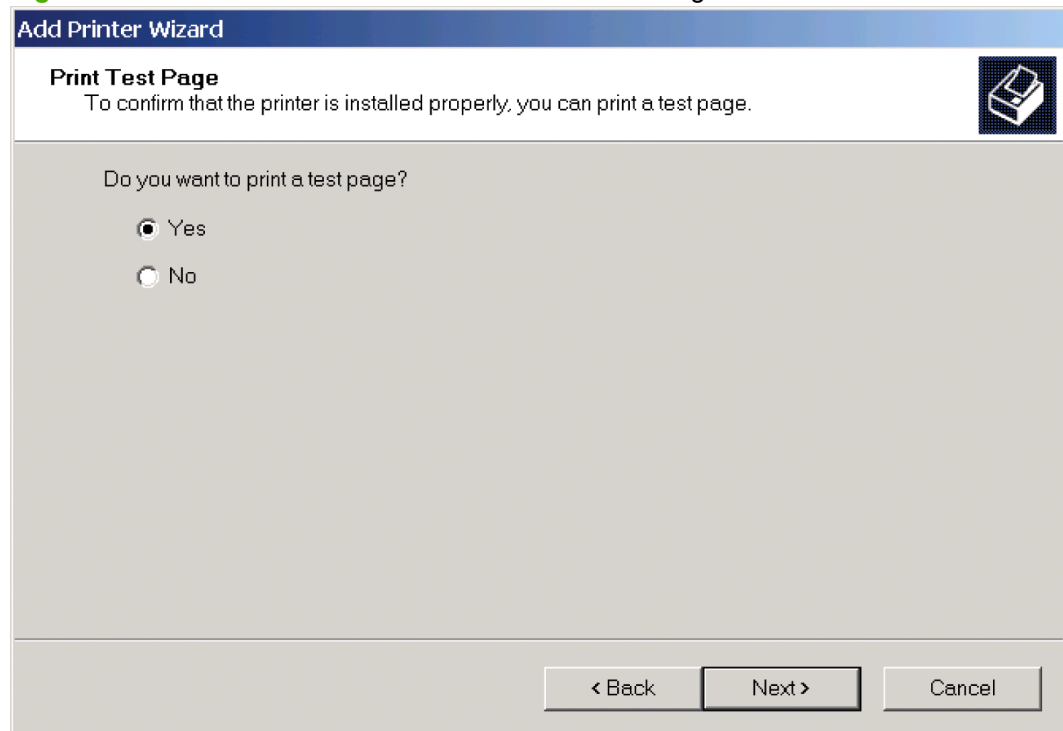
Figure 3-43 Send Fax Driver Installation — Printer Sharing screen



15. Select either the **Yes** or **No** option to send a test fax, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Yes** option, the HP Send Fax Driver will open once the installation is complete. No page is printed from the product; however, a fax will be sent.

Figure 3-44 Send Fax Driver Installation — Print Test Page screen



16. Click the **Finish** button to complete the wizard.

 **NOTE:** If you selected the **Yes** option to print a test page in the previous step, the **Setup** tab of the HP Easy Printer Care appears.

Send a fax using the HP Send Fax Driver

You can use the HP Send Fax Driver to send faxes from your computer via the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series if the optional Analog Fax Accessory 300 is installed. After the HP Send Fax Driver is installed, it can be accessed and used in the same manner as a printer driver.

 **NOTE:** For complete information about using the HP Send Fax Driver, the *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver Guide*, which can be accessed on your User CD or downloaded from www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory300, and then clicking the **Manuals** option from the left navigation bar.

Create a network folder using the Scan Setup Wizard

To create a network folder on an computer using the Scan Setup Wizard, follow these steps:

 **NOTE:** You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the < **Back** button, or exit the Scan Setup Wizard by clicking the **Cancel** button.

1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 printing-system Admin software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD Browser.

If the installation screen does not appear when you insert the Admin software CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD Browser:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
2. Click **Install**, then click the **Scan Setup Wizard** button from the main screen of the CD Browser.
 3. Click the **Install Scan Setup Wizard** button.

4. If the product's networking settings are known, enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address into the appropriate text box, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Contacting Device** screen (step 4).

If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears (step 2).

Figure 3-45 Scan Setup Wizard — Welcome screen

Scan Setup Wizard

hp Scan Setup Wizard
Welcome to the Scan Setup Wizard.

This wizard will help you create and remove network folders connected to your device. Future documents scanned from the device can be saved in this folder automatically.

Please specify the device from which you want to scan documents.

Help me find my device on the network

Device:

☒ IP Address (IPv4)

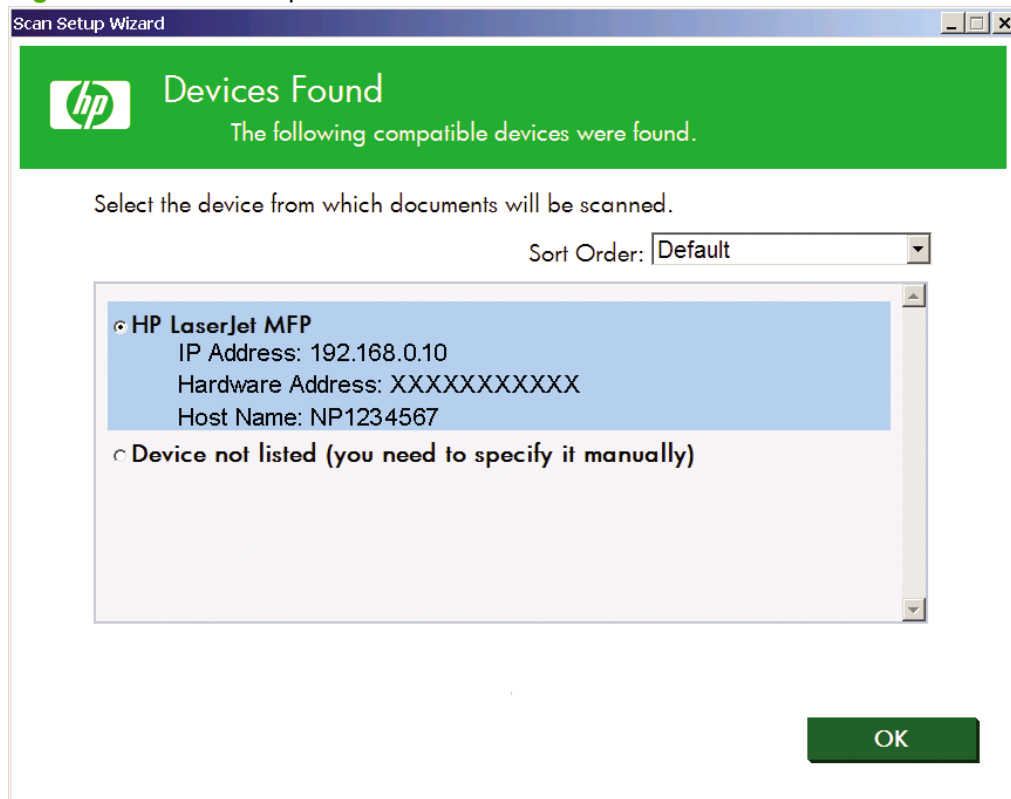
☐ Host name

☐ Hardware address (MAC)

< Back **Next >** **Cancel**

5. A list of HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and click the **OK** button to continue to the **Network Settings** screen.

Figure 3-46 Scan Setup Wizard — Devices Found screen



6. The product's network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) are displayed. Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Contacting Device** screen.

Figure 3-47 Scan Setup Wizard — Network Settings screen

7. The computer communicates with the product, and then you continue to the **Add or Remove Folders** screen.

 **NOTE:** If the **Scan to Desktop has been disabled in the EWS** error message appears, open the embedded Web server (EWS), click the **Device Settings** tab, click the **Send to Folder** menu item, and then select both the **Enable Send to Folder** and the **Enable Scan Setup Wizard** check boxes. You might also need to close and reopen the Scan Setup Wizard.

To gain access to the EWS, perform the following:

- a. Make note of the TCP/IP address of the product on the Embedded Jetdirect Page. The Embedded Jetdirect Page is the second page of the configuration page printout.

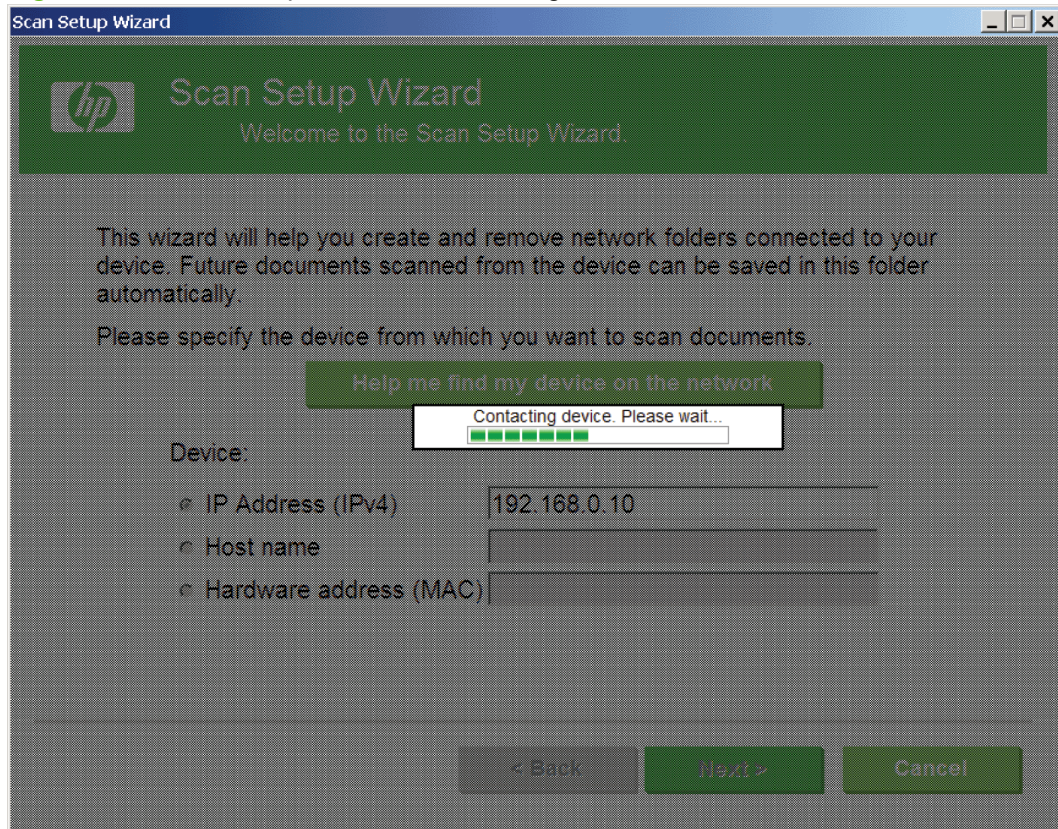
To print a configuration page from the product control panel, perform the following:

- i. Touch **Administration**.
- ii. Touch **Information**.
- iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
- iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
- v. Touch **Print**.

 **NOTE:** If the product contains an HP Jetdirect EIO print server or an optional hard disk drive, additional configuration pages print that provide information about those options.

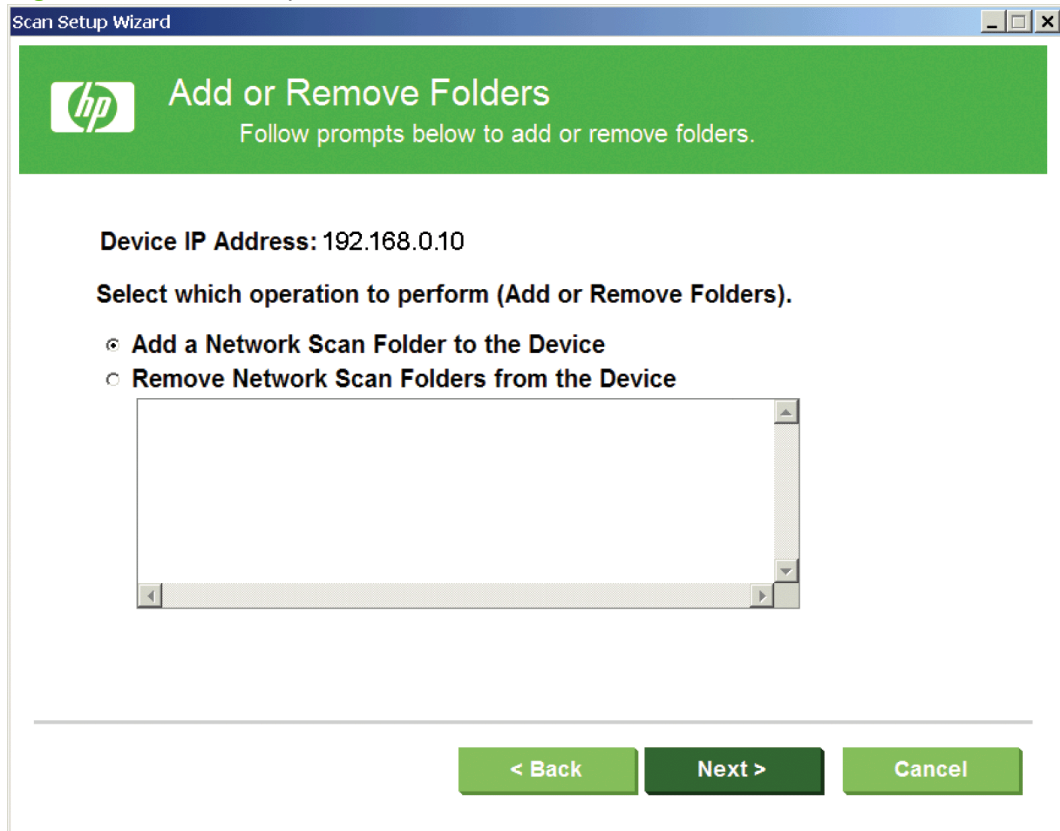
- b. Open a Web browser window.
- c. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where `<IPADDRESS>` is the TCP/IP address of your product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.10, type `ftp://192.168.0.10`.
- d. Press the **Enter** button.

Figure 3-48 Scan Setup Wizard — Contacting Device screen



8. Select the **Add a Network Scan Folder to the Device** option and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Authentication** screen.

Figure 3-49 Scan Setup Wizard — Add or Remove Folders screen

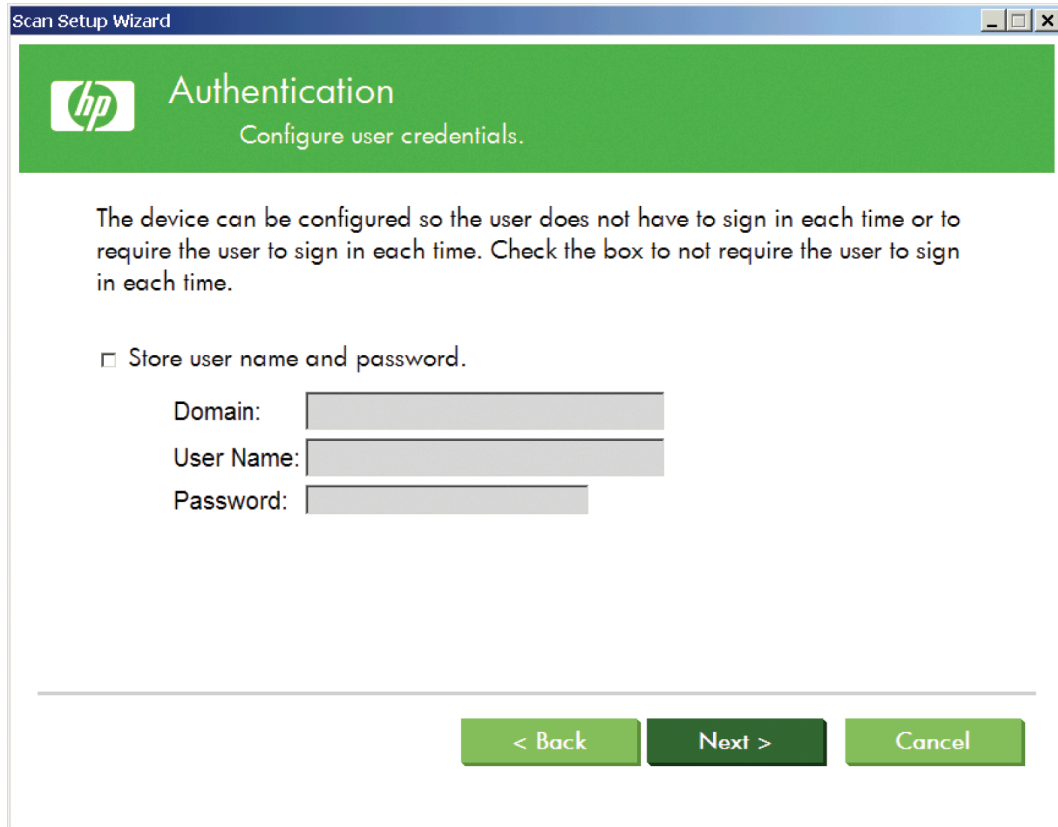


9. To require users to enter their credentials at the product, clear the **Store user name and password** check box, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Folder Settings** screen.

-or-

To use default credentials (users do not enter their credentials at the product), select the **Store user name and password** check box and enter your **Domain**, **User Name**, and **Password** into the corresponding text boxes. Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Folder Settings** screen.

Figure 3-50 Scan Setup Wizard — Authentication screen



Scan Setup Wizard

hp **Authentication**
Configure user credentials.

The device can be configured so the user does not have to sign in each time or to require the user to sign in each time. Check the box to not require the user to sign in each time.

☐ Store user name and password.

Domain:

User Name:

Password:

< Back Next > Cancel

10. Select the default scan settings from the drop-down lists and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Folder Name** screen.

Figure 3-51 Scan Setup Wizard — Folder Settings screen

Scan Setup Wizard

Folder Settings
Configure the default options for the folder.

Enter the default scan settings that you want to use when scanning to this folder.

Scan Type: Color Scan
Resolution: 150 dpi
Document Type: PDF
Quality: Medium

< Back Next > Cancel

11. Specify the folder name and location of the folder, and then click the **Create** button. A **Network Folder Creation in Progress** window appears. Once the folder has been created, you will continue to the **Complete** screen.
- You can either type a folder name in the **Folder name** text box, or use the default folder name.
 - You can either click the **Browse** button and navigate to the path where scanned documents will be stored, or enter the path in the **Location** text box.
 - If you want a shortcut to the folder placed on your desktop, select the **Create a shortcut to this folder on my desktop** check box.

Figure 3-52 Scan Setup Wizard — Folder Name screen

Scan Setup Wizard

Folder Name
Configure the default name and location for the folder.

HP LaserJet MFP (192.168.0.10)

Folder name:

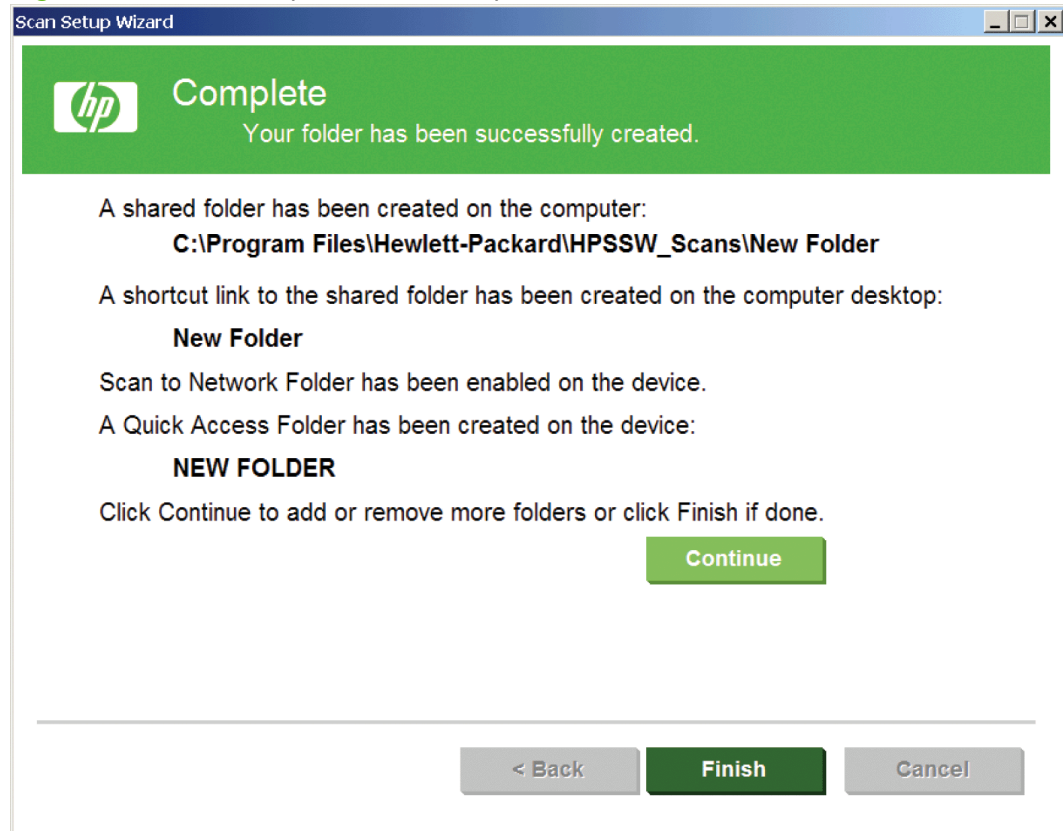
Location:

☒ Create a shortcut to this folder on my desktop.

Note: If the box is checked, a shortcut will be created on your desktop for easy access to the folder that contains documents scanned at the device and sent to the folder.

12. Click the **Continue** button to if you want to add another folder. When all folders have been created, click the **Finish** button to exit the Scan Setup Wizard.

Figure 3-53 Scan Setup Wizard — Complete screen



Install documentation and optional software

The following documentation and optional software programs are available for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series:

- HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP Screen Fonts: Printer-matching TrueType fonts to help ensure screen match printing.
- *HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP User Guide*: Includes information about the product operation, troubleshooting, warranty and specifications, supplies and support.
- *HP LaserJet M9040 / M9050 MFP Install Notes*: Includes information about installing your product's software

Perform the following to install or uninstall the documentation and optional software programs:

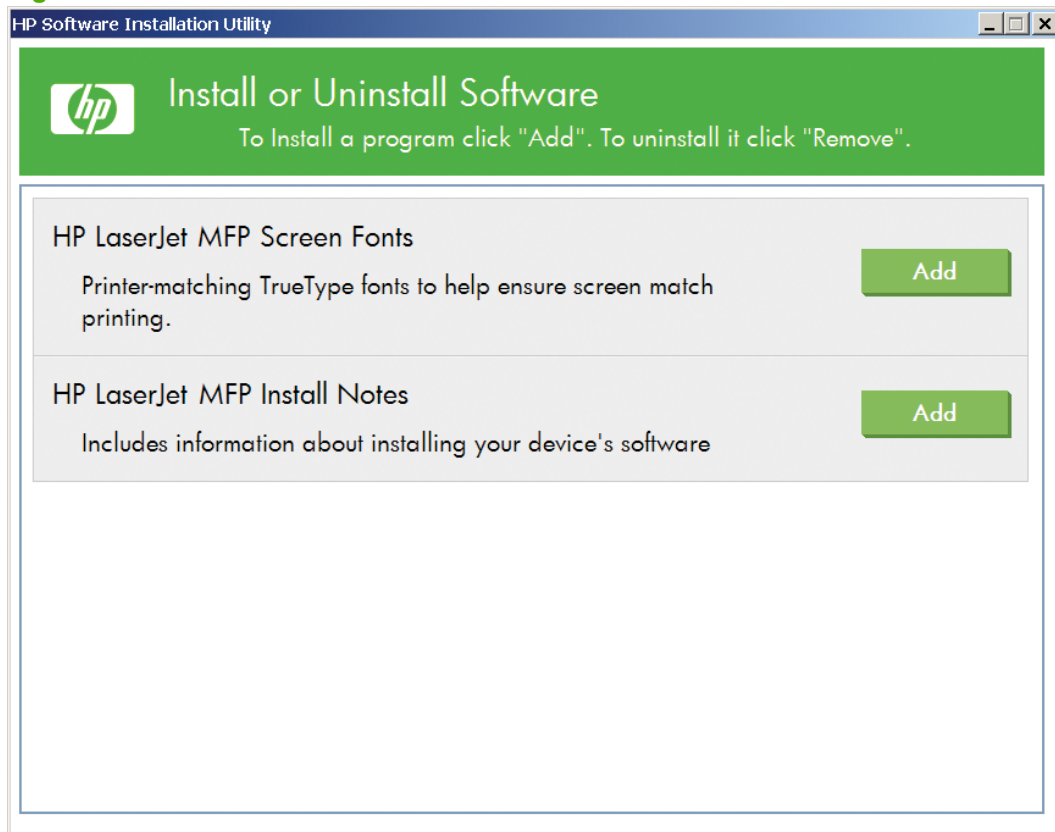
1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 Admin software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
2. Click the **Install** button. The printer driver screen appears.

3. Click the **Install Documentation and Optional Software** button.
4. Click either the **Add** or the **Remove** button next to the documentation or optional software program you want to install or uninstall.

Figure 3-54 Install or Uninstall Software



Uninstall software

 **NOTE:** If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed using the HP Driver Installation Utility, follow the instructions in the [Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using Windows Add or Remove Programs feature on page 131](#) section. If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed using the Add Printer Wizard, follow the instructions in the [Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature on page 135](#) section.

Uninstall component list

The following HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series components, if previously installed, can be removed from your computer using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature:

- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PCL 5 driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PCL 6 driver
- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PS driver
- *HP LaserJet M9040 / M9050 MFP Install Notes*
- HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP Screen Fonts
- *HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP User Guide*
- HP Send Fax Driver

Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using Windows Add or Remove Programs feature

If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU), perform the following to uninstall the driver:

 **NOTE:** Using this uninstall method, you do not need the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 printing-system software CD.

NOTE: To uninstall the software, you must log on with Administrator privileges.

1. Close all programs.
2. **Windows 2000:** On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, click **Control Panel** option, and then double-click the **Add/Remove programs** option.

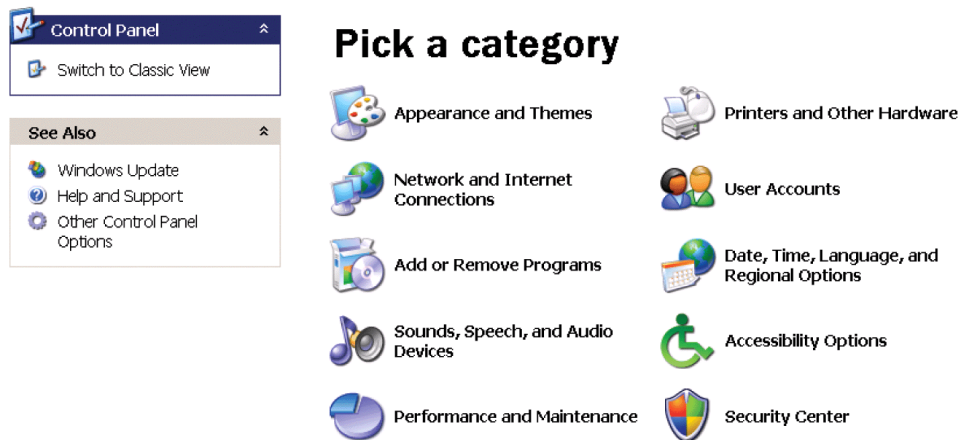
- or -

Windows XP and Windows Server 2003: On the **Start** menu, click the **Control Panel** option, and then double-click the **Add/Remove programs** option.

- or -

Windows Vista: On the **Start** menu, click the **Control Panel** option, and then under the **Programs** menu click the **Uninstall a program** option.

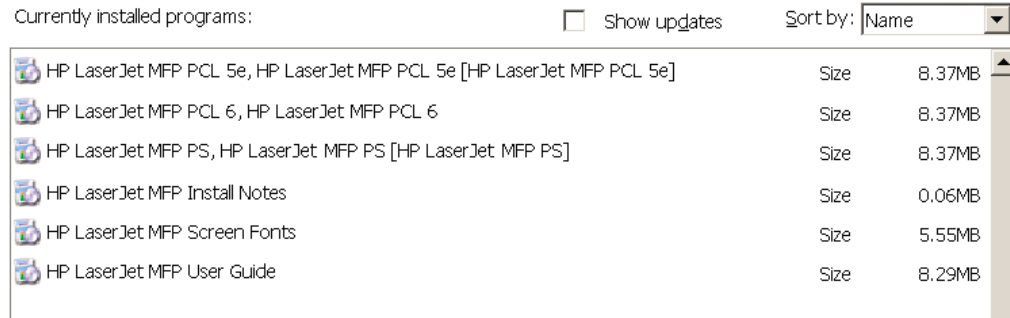
Figure 3-55 Windows Control Panel screen



3. Click **Change or Remove Programs**, select the component you want to remove, and then click **Change/Remove**. The following components might appear in the list of programs:
 - HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PCL 5 driver
 - HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PCL 6 driver

- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PS driver
- *HP LaserJet M9040 / M9050 MFP Install Notes*
- HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP Screen Fonts
- *HP LaserJet M9040/M9050 MFP User Guide*
- HP Send Fax Driver

Figure 3-56 Windows Change or Remove Programs screen

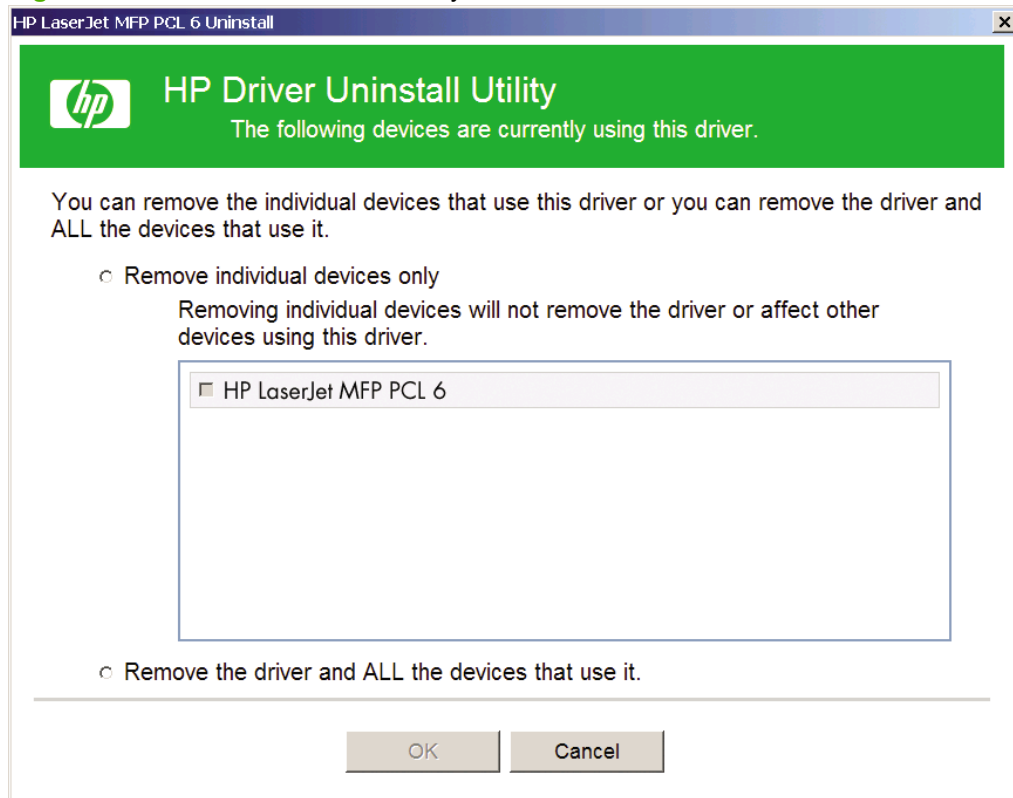


4. If you are uninstalling the PCL 5, PCL 6, PS printer driver, or the HP Send Fax Driver, go to step 5.

If you are uninstalling the Install Notes, Screen Fonts, or User Guide, go to step 7.

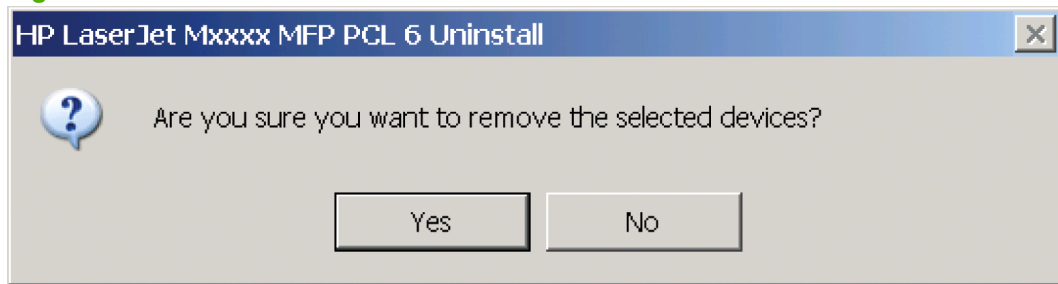
5. If you are uninstalling the PCL 5, PCL 6, PS printer driver, or the HP Send Fax Driver, the HP Driver Uninstall Utility (HPDUU) appears. Select either the **Remove individual devices only** option or the **Remove the driver and ALL the devices that use it** option, and then click the **OK** button.

Figure 3-57 HP Driver Uninstall Utility screen



6. If you select the **Remove individual devices only** option, the following dialog box appears. Select the **Yes** button to continue.

Figure 3-58 Uninstall selected device screen



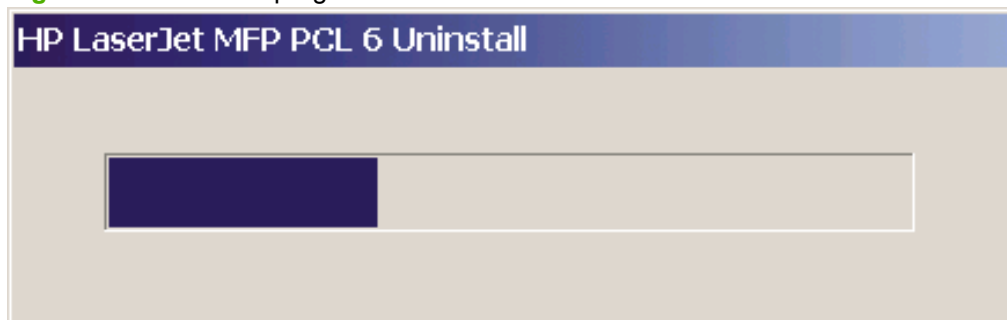
If you select the **Remove the driver and ALL the devices that use it.** option, the following dialog box appears. Select the **Yes** button to continue.

Figure 3-59 Uninstall all devices screen



For both options, an uninstall progress window appears. Once the uninstall has completed, the progress window closes and then the Windows Add or Programs dialog box refreshes.

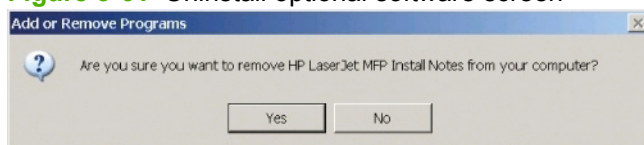
Figure 3-60 Uninstall progress window



7. If you are uninstalling the Install Notes, Screen Fonts, or User Guide, a dialog box similar to the one below appears. Select the **Yes** button to continue.

An uninstall progress window opens. Once the uninstall has completed, the progress window closes and then the Windows Add or Programs dialog box refreshes.

Figure 3-61 Uninstall optional software screen



Uninstall the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver by using the Server Properties feature

If the printer driver or the HP Send Fax Driver was installed by using the Add Printer Wizard, perform the following to uninstall the driver:



NOTE: To uninstall the software, you must log on with Administrator privileges.

1. Close all programs.
2. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then
Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.
-or-
Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.
-or-
Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.
-or-
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.
3. Right-click the icon for your product and then click the **Delete** button. This removes the icon for the product only, but it does not remove the associated files.
4. To remove the associated files, click the **File** menu from inside the **Printers** folder, and then click the **Server Properties** option.
5. Click the **Driver** tab, click the name of your product, and then click the **Remove** button. When you are prompted to confirm the deletion, click the **Yes** button.
6. Click the **Close** button to close the Server Properties dialog box, and then close the Printers folder.

Uninstall documentation and optional software



NOTE: To uninstall the software, you must log on with Administrator privileges.

NOTE: Printer drivers cannot be uninstalled using this method. Instead, use either the Window Add or Remove Programs feature or the Server Properties feature.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 or HP Color LaserJet CM6040 software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The installer program should open.
 - a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
 - b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - c. Click the **OK** button.
3. Click the **Install** button.
4. Click the **Install Documentation and Optional Software** button.
5. Click the **Remove** button for the feature you want to uninstall.

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- The product control panel
- The software program print dialog box
- The driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Microsoft Windows 2000, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2003, and Microsoft Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is the recommended driver and the first selection in the CD Browser. The HP PS Universal Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver can be installed by download from hp.com (link in browser button). They can also be installed by the installer, which is included with the driver.

Topics:

- [Access print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Output tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)

- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)

Access print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PCL 6 Print Driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

“What's this?” Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the **F1** key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

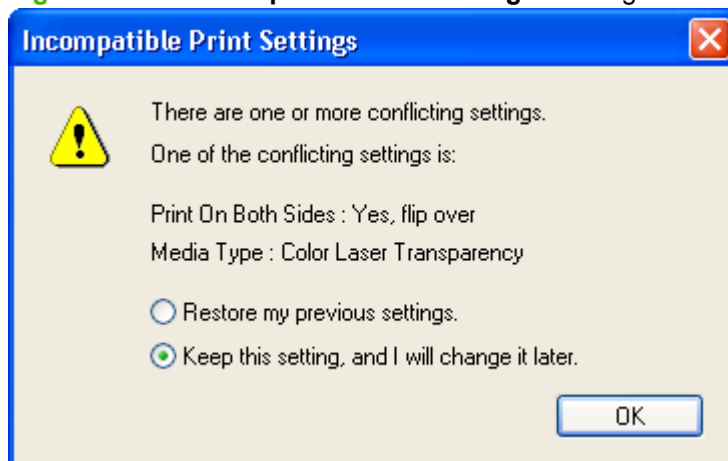
Incompatible Print Settings messages

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.

In supported Windows operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

Figure 4-1 An **Incompatible Print Settings** message



To resolve the conflicting settings, click **Restore my previous settings.** and then click **OK**. The driver resets the conflicting control back to its previous state.

If you want to keep the conflicting setting, click **Keep this setting, and I will change it later.** and then click **OK**.

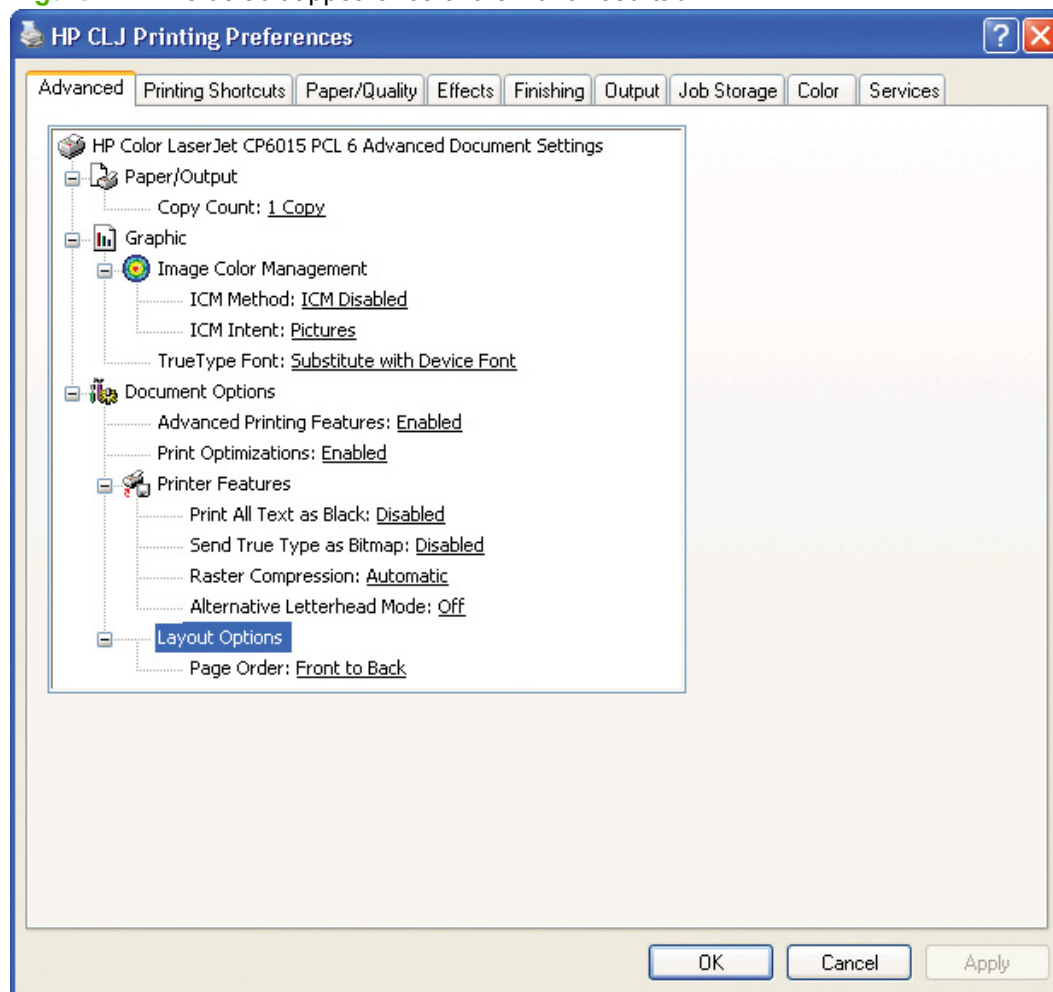
 **NOTE:** In this example, the conflict can be resolved manually. If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, then the same dialog appears again when a print job is sent to the product.

Advanced tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Advanced** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 4-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

Graphic

The **Graphic** setting contains the following controls:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **TrueType Font** settings

Image Color Management

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method.** The ICM Method setting specifies how to print color graphics.
 - To enable Image Color Management, click the option and then select **ICM Enabled**.
 - If you want the host computer to perform calculations for color matching before it sends the document to the product, click **ICM Handled by Host System**.
 - If you want the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product to perform calculations for color matching, click **ICM Handled by Printer**. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the product. The product uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
- **ICM Intent.** The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
 - If you are printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors, click **Graphics**.
 - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, click **Pictures** to maximize the contrast.

- If your document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a product that has that specific color of ink, click **Proof**.
- If you want to preview the color settings from another product, click **Match**.

TrueType Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** setting contains the following controls:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product.

Enhanced metafile spooling is used to greatly reduce the amount of time that elapses between a request to print (initiated by an application) and the return of control to the application by the operating system.

For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still appear in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following controls:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap**

Send TrueType as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression**

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics-compression method:

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
- **Best Quality.** This option forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, this option requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost).

- **Alternative Letterhead Mode**

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. If the product tray has an icon that indicates whether to load paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper in opposite orientation of that shown.

When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the **Paper type** setting:

- Letterhead
- Preprinted

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.

 **NOTE:** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

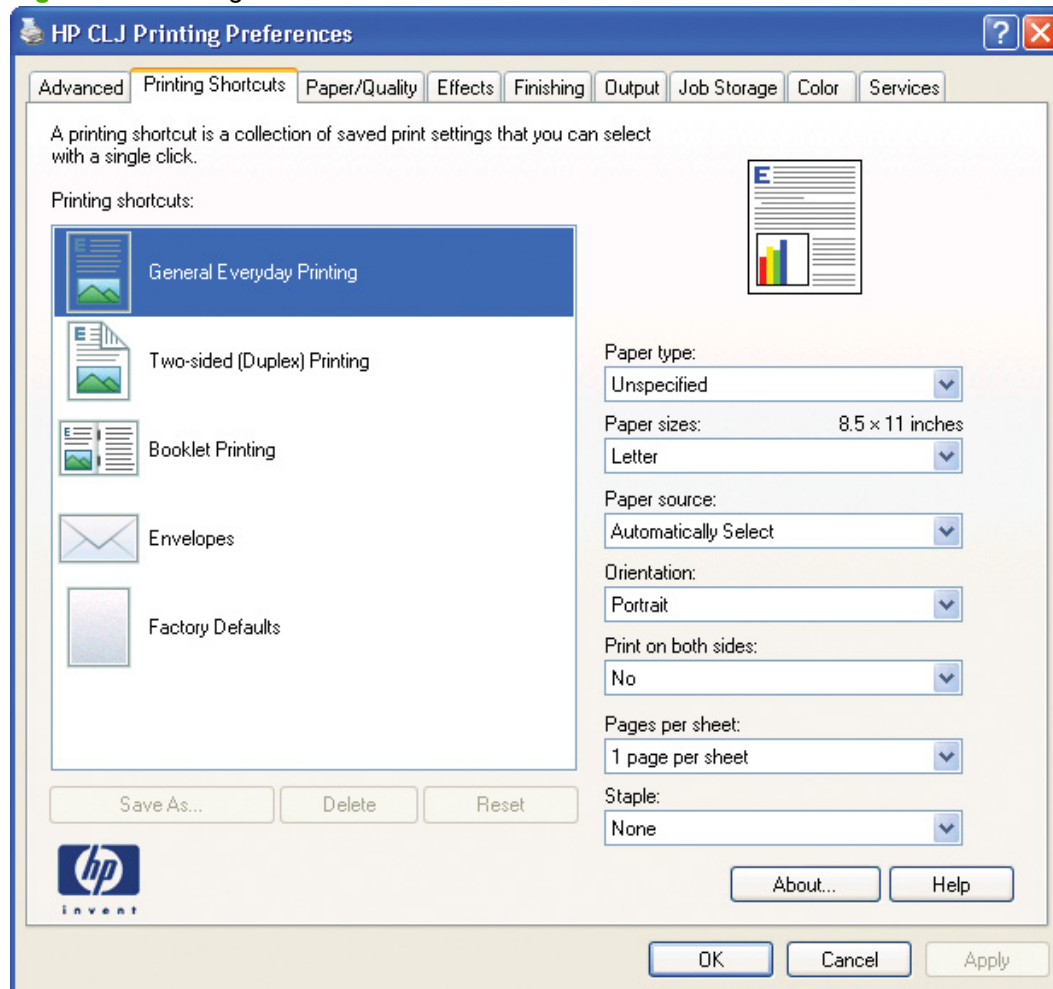
- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-3 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PCL 6 Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

Use defined printing shortcuts

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [General Everyday Printing](#)
- [Two-sided \(Duplex\) Printing](#)
- [Booklet Printing](#)
- [Envelopes](#)
- [Factory Defaults](#)

 **NOTE:** Selections (for example, paper types) that are found under the **Printing Shortcuts** tab may include all items found in other driver tabs. The selection list may be shortened under a shortcut for simplification.

General Everyday Printing

When **General Everyday Printing** is selected, the following controls are available:

- **Paper source**
- **Paper sizes**
- **Paper type**
- **Orientation**
- **Print on both sides**
- **Pages per sheet**
- **Staple**

 **NOTE:** This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to change customized settings back to the default settings.

Paper source

The following options are available:

- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Printer auto select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3**

- Tray 4
- Tray 5

Paper sizes

The following options are available:

- Letter (default)
- Legal
- Executive
- Statement
- 8.5 x 13
- 11 x 17
- C size sheet
- 12 x 18
- 4 x 6
- 5 x 8
- A3
- A2
- A4
- A5
- A6
- RA3
- SRA3
- B4 (JIS)
- B5 (JIS)
- B6 (JIS)
- 8K 270 x 390mm
- 16K 195 x 270mm

Paper type

The following options are available:

- Unspecified (default)
- Plain
- Intermediate 85 - 95

- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Mid-weight 96 - 110**
- **Mid-weight Glossy 96 - 110**
- **Heavy 111 - 130**
- **Heavy Glossy 111 - 130**
- **Extra Heavy 131 - 175**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy 131 - 175**
- **Cardstock 176 - 220**
- **Card Glossy 176 - 220**
- **Letterhead**
- **Envelope**
- **Preprinted**
- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Rough**
- **HP Tough Paper**

Orientation

The following options are available:

- **Portrait** (default)
- **Landscape**

Print on both sides

The following options are available:

- **No** (default)
- **Yes, Flip Over**
- **Yes, Flip Up**

Pages per sheet

The following options are available:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**

- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Staple



NOTE: The **Staple** options appear only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

The following staple options are available:

- **None**
- **One staple left**
- **One staple right**
- **Two staples left**
- **Two staples right**

Two-sided (Duplex) Printing



NOTE: Because this product does not include a duplexing unit, the **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** option is available, but duplexing is a manual process.

When **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** is selected, the following options are selected:

- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Paper sizes: Letter**
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: Yes, flip over**
- **Pages per sheet: 1 page per sheet**
- **Staple: none** (This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.)

Booklet Printing



NOTE: The **Booklet Printing** option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

When **Booklet Printing** is selected, the following options are selected:

- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Paper sizes: Letter**
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Orientation: Portrait**

- **Booklet Layout: Left binding**
- **Print document on: Letter**
- **Staple: Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**

Envelopes

When **Envelopes** is selected, the following options are selected:

- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Paper sizes: Envelope #9**
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Orientation: Portrait**

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are unavailable, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper source: Automatically select**
- **Paper sizes: Letter/A4** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: No**
- **Staple: None** (This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.)

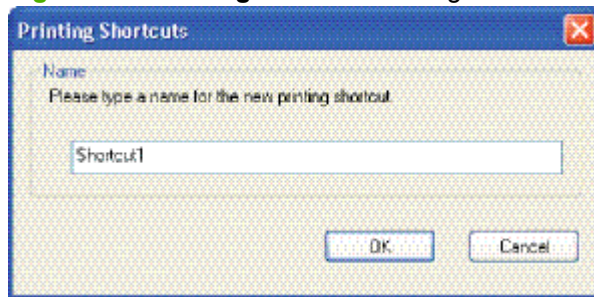
Create a custom printing shortcut

Follow these instructions to create a custom printing shortcut:

1. Select one of the defined printing shortcuts as a base.
2. Select the appropriate print settings on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab or by using the settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** tabs.

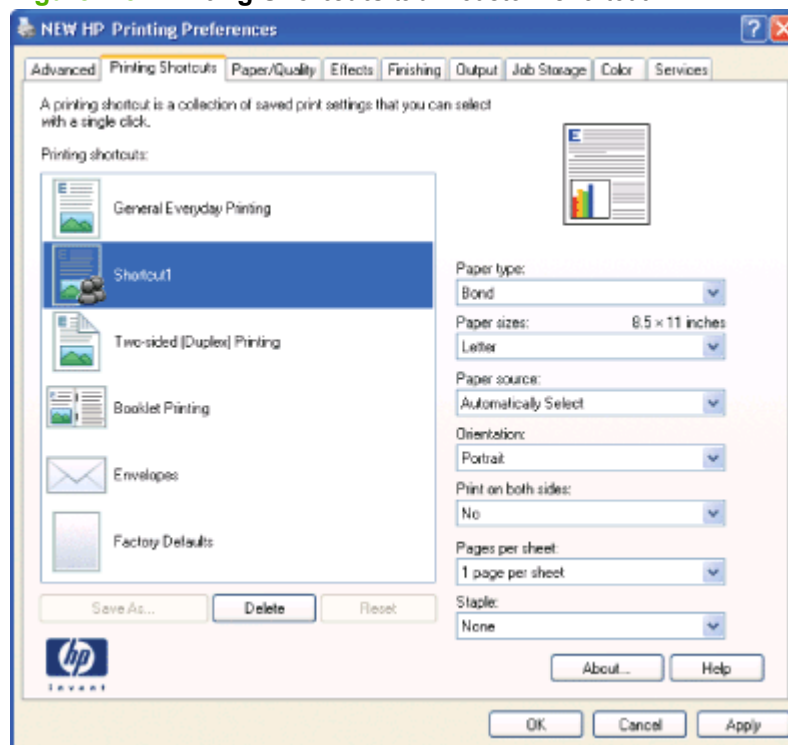
3. On the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, click **Save As. . .** The **Printing Shortcuts** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-4 Printing Shortcuts dialog box



4. Type a name for the custom printing shortcut, and then click **OK**. The custom printing shortcut appears in the printing shortcuts list.

Figure 4-5 Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut



5. To delete a custom printing shortcut, click the custom shortcut, then click **Delete**.

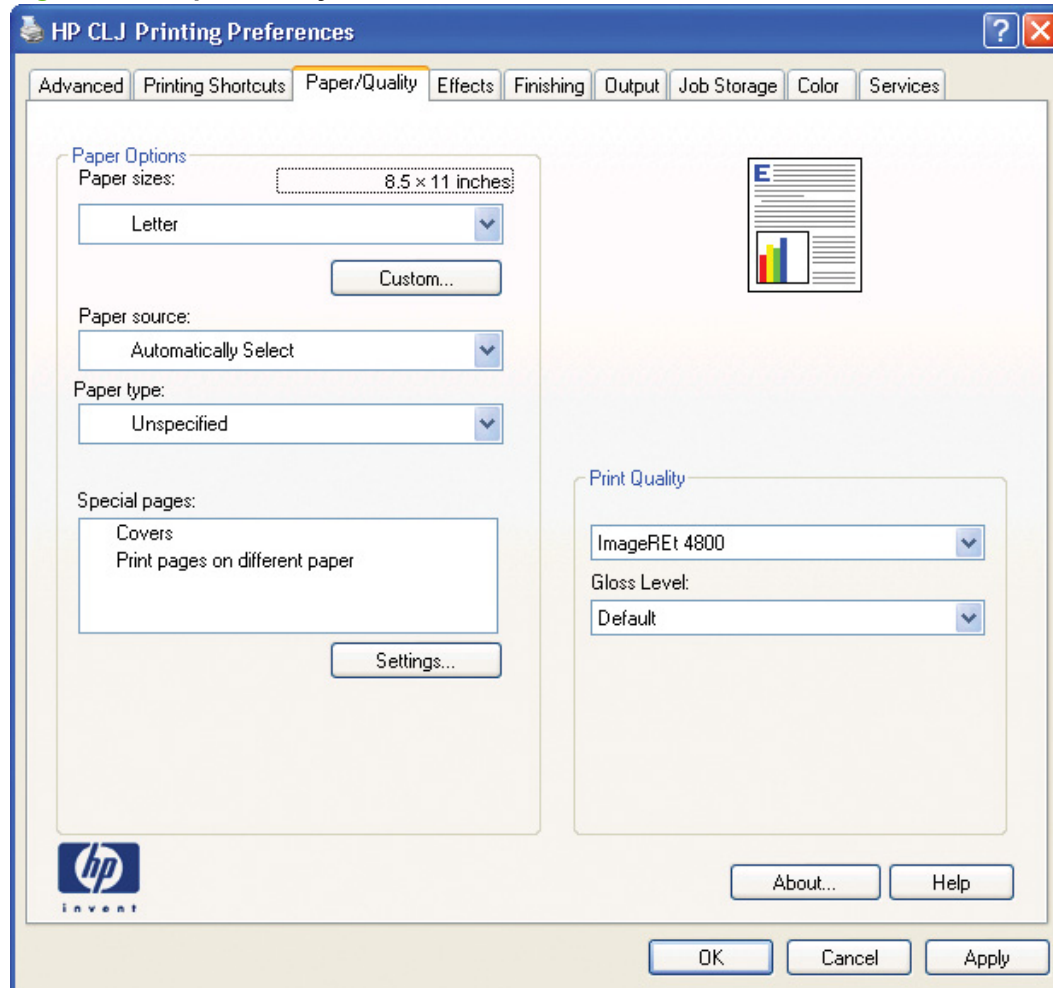


Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify paper size, type, and source. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 4-6 Paper/Quality tab



The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 4-7 Paper Options group box

The screenshot shows the 'Paper Options' group box. At the top, 'Paper sizes:' is followed by a text box containing '8.5 x 11 inches'. Below this is a dropdown menu currently set to 'Letter'. To the right of the dropdown is a 'Custom...' button. Further down, 'Paper source:' is followed by a dropdown menu set to 'Automatically Select'. Below that, 'Paper type:' is followed by a dropdown menu set to 'Unspecified'. At the bottom, 'Special pages:' is followed by a list box containing 'Covers' and 'Print pages on different paper'. A 'Settings...' button is located at the bottom right of the group box.

The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:

- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

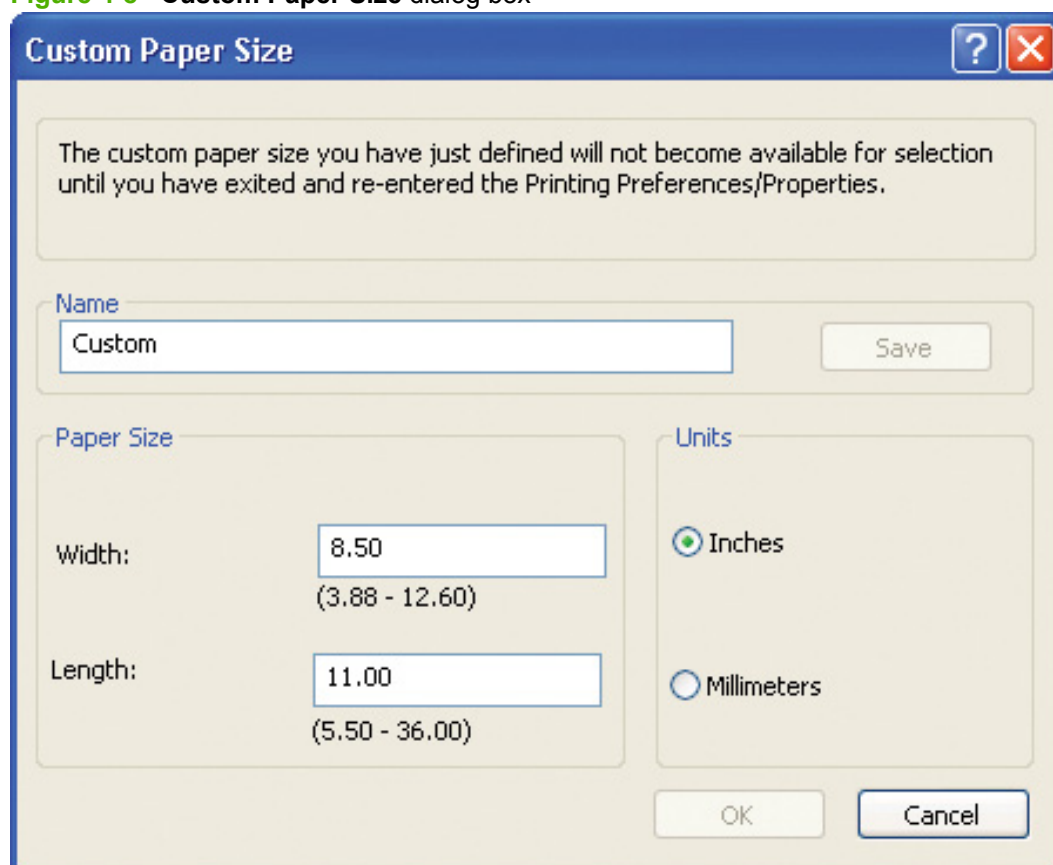
For information about paper sizes, see the Engineering Details section of this STR.

When the **Settings** under the **Special Pages** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes**, **Paper source**, and **Paper type** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 159](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Figure 4-8 Custom Paper Size dialog box



Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

The width and height values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1/100 of a millimeter or 1/100 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for this product is 98.6 x 139.7 mm (3.9 x 5.5 in) and the maximum is 320 x 457.2 mm (12.6 x 18 inches). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.6 mm (3.8 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	139.7 mm (5.5 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	297.0 mm (11.7 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	432.0 mm (17.0 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320.0 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes (continued)

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 4 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320.0 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Tray 5	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320.0 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Duplexer	Width	184.0 mm (7.24 inches)	320.0 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.27 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)

Paper source

The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 4** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CM6040f only)
- **Tray 5** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CM6040f only)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see the **Engineering Details** chapter of this STR.

Paper type

The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows the first few paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supports:

- **Unspecified**
- **Plain**
- **Light 60 - 74**
- **Intermediate 85 - 95**
- **Bond**

- Recycled
- Mid-weight Glossy 96 - 110
- Mid-weight 96 - 110
- Heavy 111 - 130
- Heavy Glossy 111 - 130
- Extra Heavy 131 - 175
- Extra Heavy Glossy 131 - 175
- Cardstock 176 - 220
- Card Glossy 176 - 220
- Color Laser Transparency
- Labels
- Letterhead
- Envelope
- Preprinted
- Prepunched
- Colored
- Rough
- HP Tough Paper

When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information on an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source** setting. For more information about paper types, see the **Engineering Details** chapter of this STR.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.

Covers

To specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special Pages** window, then click **Settings**.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type** setting here override any previous **Paper type** settings using the same paper source.



NOTE: The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

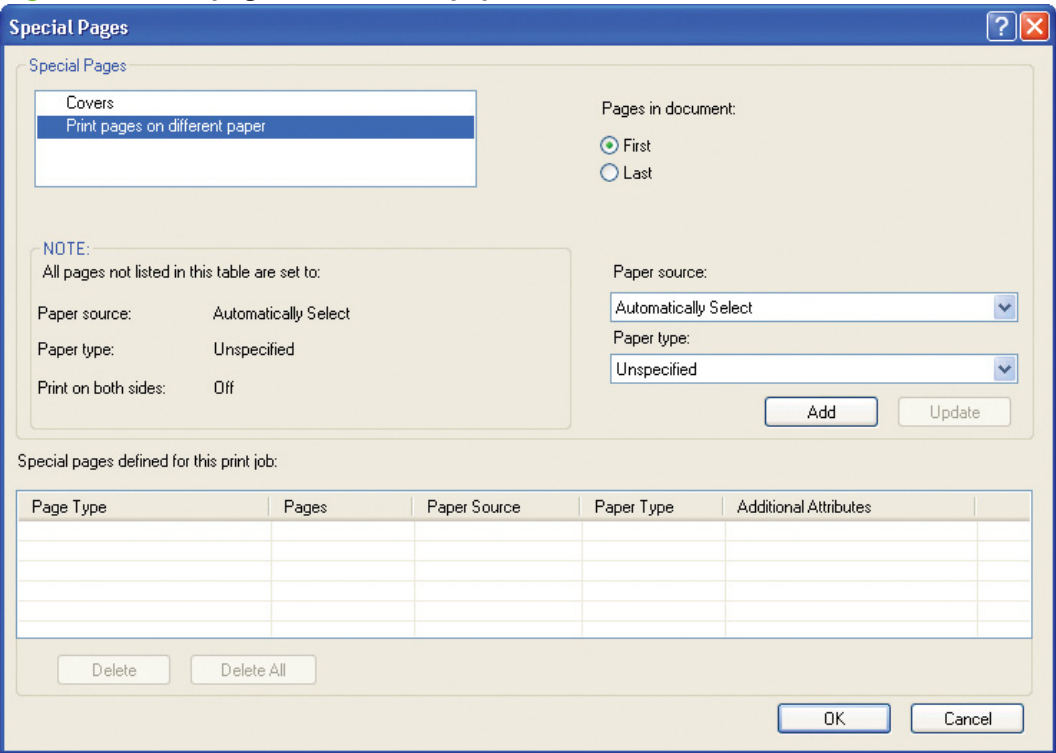
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-9 Print pages on different paper - First or Last



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page or the **Last** page.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**

- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)

Print Quality drop-down menu

Use this control to select a print quality. Numeric values are in dots per inch (dpi). ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to 4 colors within a single dot and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create millions of smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

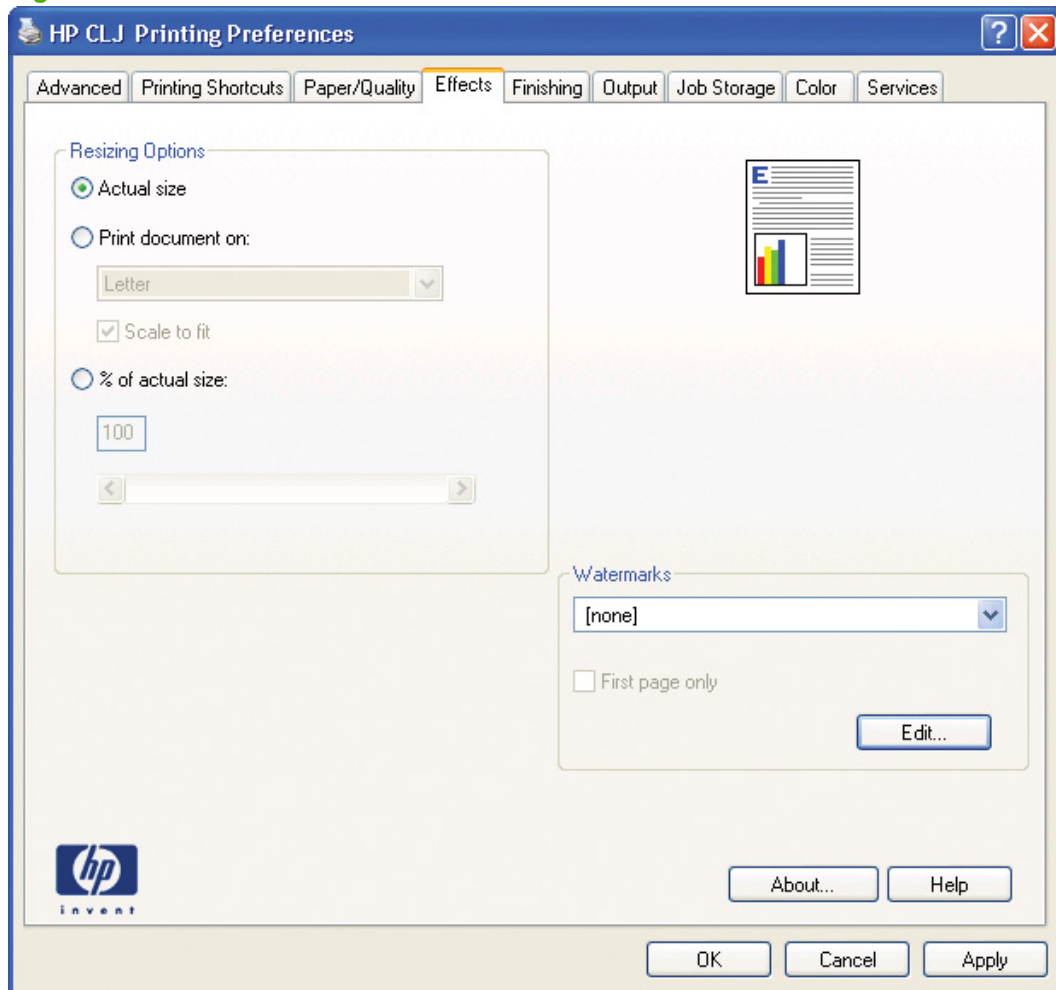
- **ImageREt 4800.** This setting produces 4800 dpi color laser-class print quality. This setting is selected by default.
- **1200 x 600.** This setting is the best option for printing line images and fine text. It provides laser-class print quality but is slower than ImageREt 4800.

Effects tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Effects** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 4-10 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual size** (default)
- **Print document on** setting

- **Scale to fit** option
- **% of Actual size** setting

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

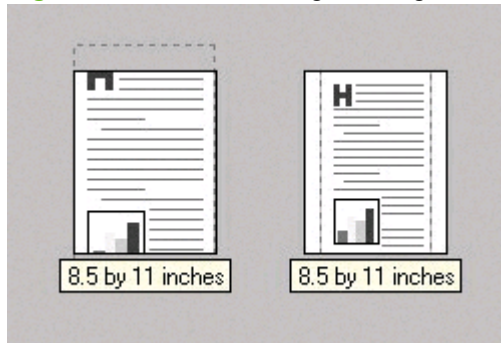
- The **% of Actual size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

Figure 4-11 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of Actual Size

The **% of Actual Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of actual size. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does

not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider-bar indicator. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of Actual Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following Printing Preferences driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a new watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

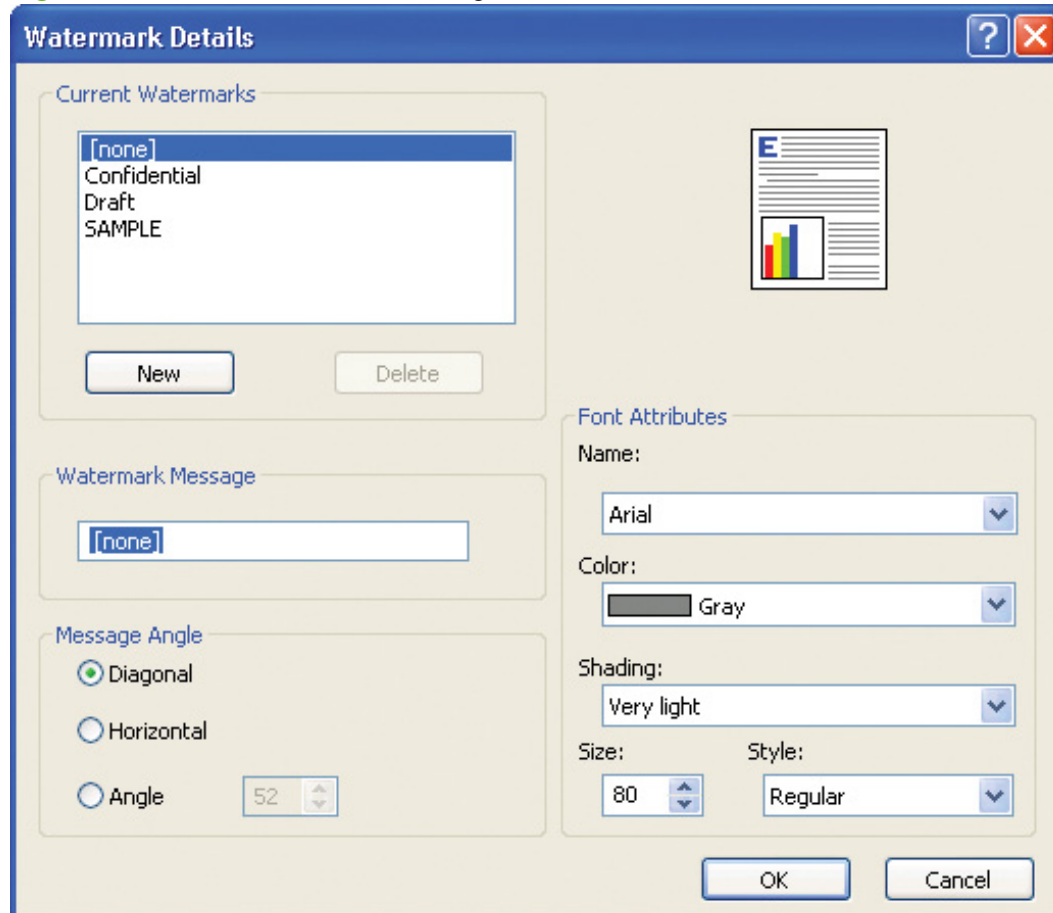
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)," which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)."

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-12 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "**Untitled**" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

 **NOTE:** You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal.** This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal.** Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom.** Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**

- **Shading**

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

- The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 4-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	Arial	Varies by language
Color	Gray	Gray
Shading	Very Light	Very Light
Size	80	Varies by language
Style	Regular	Regular

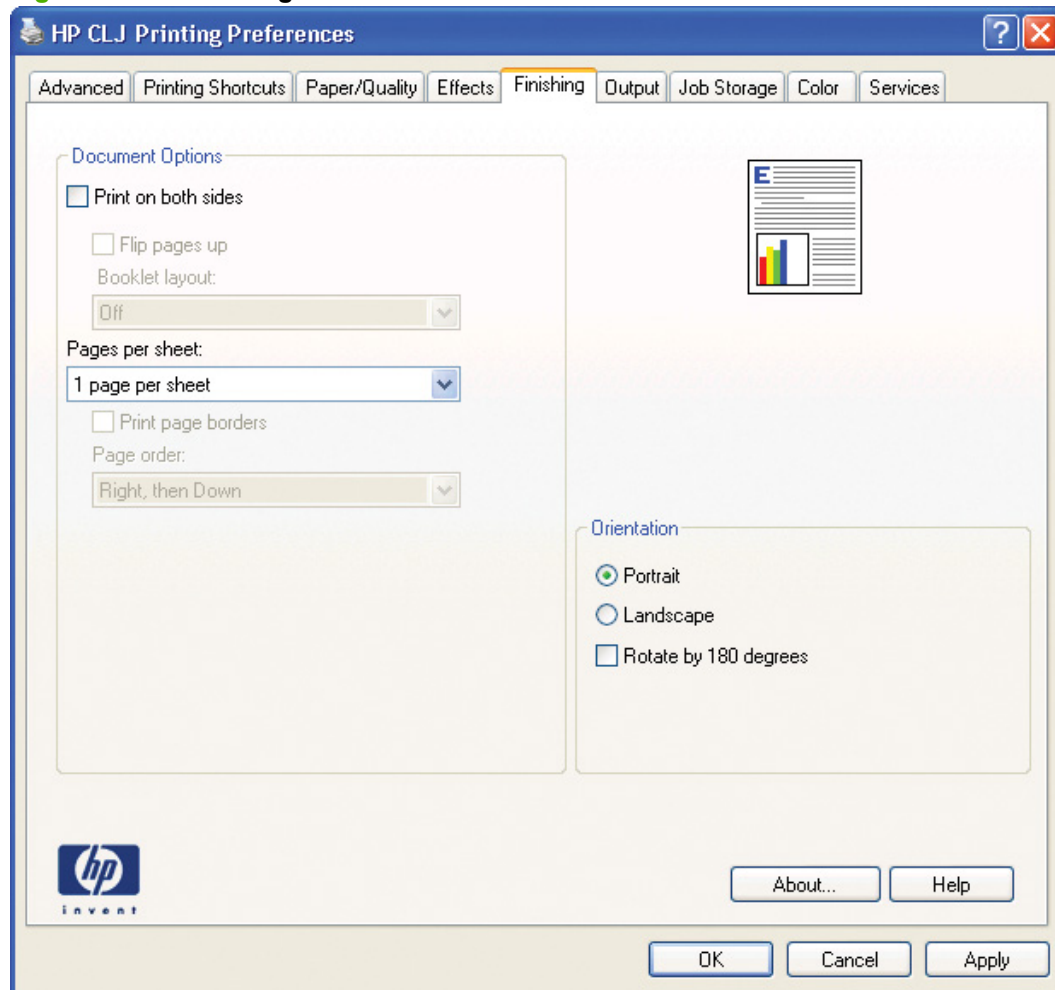
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 4-13 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on both sides](#)

- [Flip pages up](#)
- [Booklet layout](#)
- [Pages per sheet](#)
- [Print page borders](#)
- [Page order](#)

Print on both sides

The default setting for the **Print on both sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on both sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type** on the **Paper/Quality** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Paper sizes** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**

Print on both sides (automatically)

The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Cardstock

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with

the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Print on both sides (manually)

- **Manually Print on 2nd Side** is *not* selected by default.

Select the **Print on both sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP product model, which does not have a duplexing unit installed. Also select **Print on both sides (Manually)** on the other HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product models for paper types that are not available when using the automatic duplexing unit, such as cardstock and thick paper.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available when you are using the HP PCL 6 driver. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the product automatically prints on both sides of paper types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 11 only). For paper types that are *not* supported for automatic duplexing, a help message appears prompting you to configure the driver settings for manual printing on both sides. Manual printing on both sides does not occur automatically.

Select the paper type that corresponds to the paper that you are using for the print job. The following paper types have a different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Colored
- Rough

 **NOTE:** To make the **Print on both sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the print-driver **Properties** tab set. See [Installable Options on page 198](#). Also, under **Device Settings**, set **Duplex Unit** to **Not Installed**.

If you want to print on both sides manually while using paper that is supported for automatic duplexing, you must select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Allow manual duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should *never* be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on both sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the MANUALLY FEED message, insert the stack of paper (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

4. If a finisher is attached, follow these steps:
 - The graphic and instructions for manual duplex are correct for use with long-edge feed media. Rotate the stack with the short edge as the axis, and place in the manual-feed tray. Even-numbered pages should be face up, with long-edge feed.
 - If short-edge feed media is used (letter-R, for example), flip the media as shown in the graphic (short edge as the axis), and also rotate the stack 90 degrees counterclockwise and then place in Tray 1. Even-numbered pages should be face up, with long-edge feed, even though the paper started out as short-edge feed.
5. If a finisher is not attached follow these steps:
 - For long-edge feed paper, rotate the stack with the long edge as the axis, and place in the manual-feed tray. Even-numbered pages should be face up, with long-edge feed.
 - For short-edge feed paper, flip the media as shown in the graphic, but also rotate the stack 90 degrees counterclockwise and then place in Tray 1. Even-numbered pages should be face up, with long-edge feed, even though the paper started out as short-edge feed.

Flip pages up

Use the **Flip pages up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip pages up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on both sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip pages up selected	Flip pages up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on both sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to

4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See [Pages per sheet on page 174](#) for more information.

Book and Booklet Printing

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 154](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

1. Open the driver **Printing Preferences** tab set and click the **Printing Shortcuts** tab. For information about how to access the **Printing Preferences** tab set, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

2. Click to select **Booklet Printing**.



NOTE: Typically, you select the size of each page of the booklet in your software program by clicking **File**, clicking **Page**, and then clicking **Setup**. For example, if each page of the finished book is to be Letter-sized in your 2-up booklet, select **Letter** in your software program, and then select **11 x 17** from the **Print document on** drop-down menu (physical size of the page) on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab. If your software program does not allow you to set the paper size, use the **Paper sizes** drop-down menu on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

3. Select the appropriate settings from the following drop-down menus on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.
 - **Paper source**
 - **Paper size**
 - **Paper type**
 - **Orientation**
 - **Booklet Layout**
 - **Print document on**
 - **Staple**
4. Click **OK** to print.

Pages per sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are

arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**



NOTE: When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print page borders

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per Sheet** are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

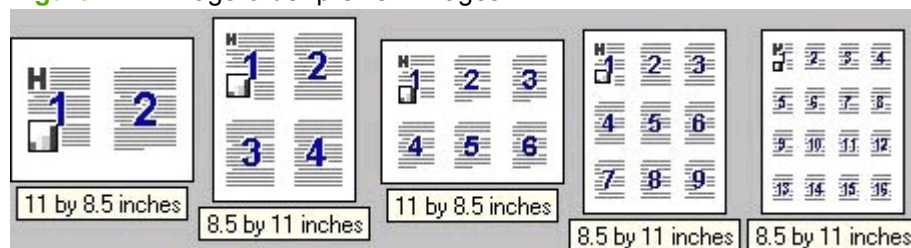
Page order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 4-14 Page-order preview images



- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Job Separator

This button produces the **Detail** dialog box.

This button only appears when the **Job Separator** setting is enabled under **Device** settings.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

 **NOTE:** Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

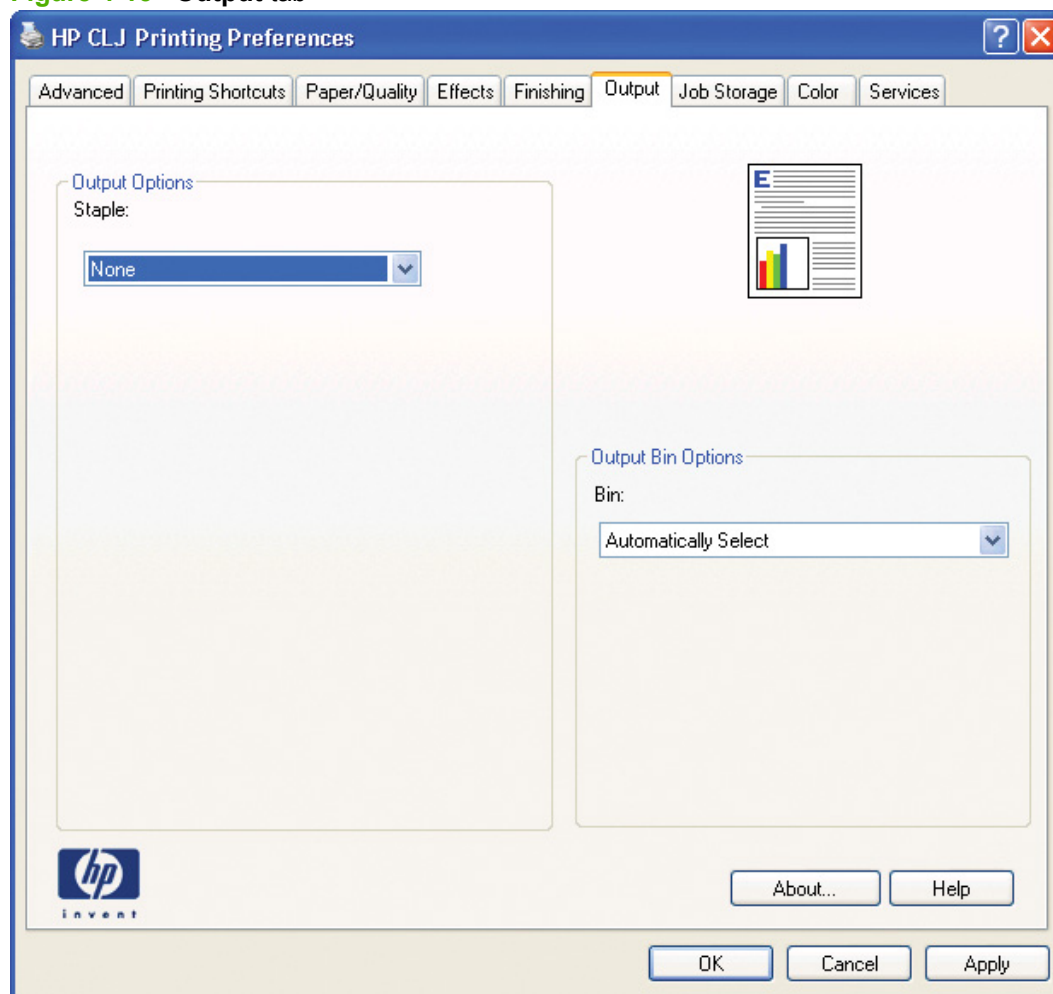
You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Output tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Output** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the **Output** tab to select finishing and output options for a document. The following figure shows the **Output** tab.

Figure 4-15 Output tab



The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- **Output Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Output Bin Options**

Output Options

The **Output** tab appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

The available **Output Options** that are available depend on which output accessory is installed and configured on the product. The options for accessories, which must be configured on the **Device Settings** tab, are:

- **None**
- **One staple left**
- **One staple right**
- **Two staples left**
- **Two staples right**
- **Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right side up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image.

Output Bin options

The available settings depend on which accessory output bin is installed on your product, the HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory. The following options are available.

- **Automatically Select:** Sends the pages to the product's default output bin.
- **Upper Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed (correct-ordered output).
- **Middle Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order.
- **Lower Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order. For the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory, the Lower Left Bin is used for booklet output only.

Job Storage tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Job Storage** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab. To support job-storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print postscript (PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory, install a hard disk, or both. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features. A minimum total memory of 288 MB is required to use the **Proof and Hold** and **Personal Job** job-storage features. A hard disk is required to use the **Quick Copy** and **Stored Job** job-storage features.

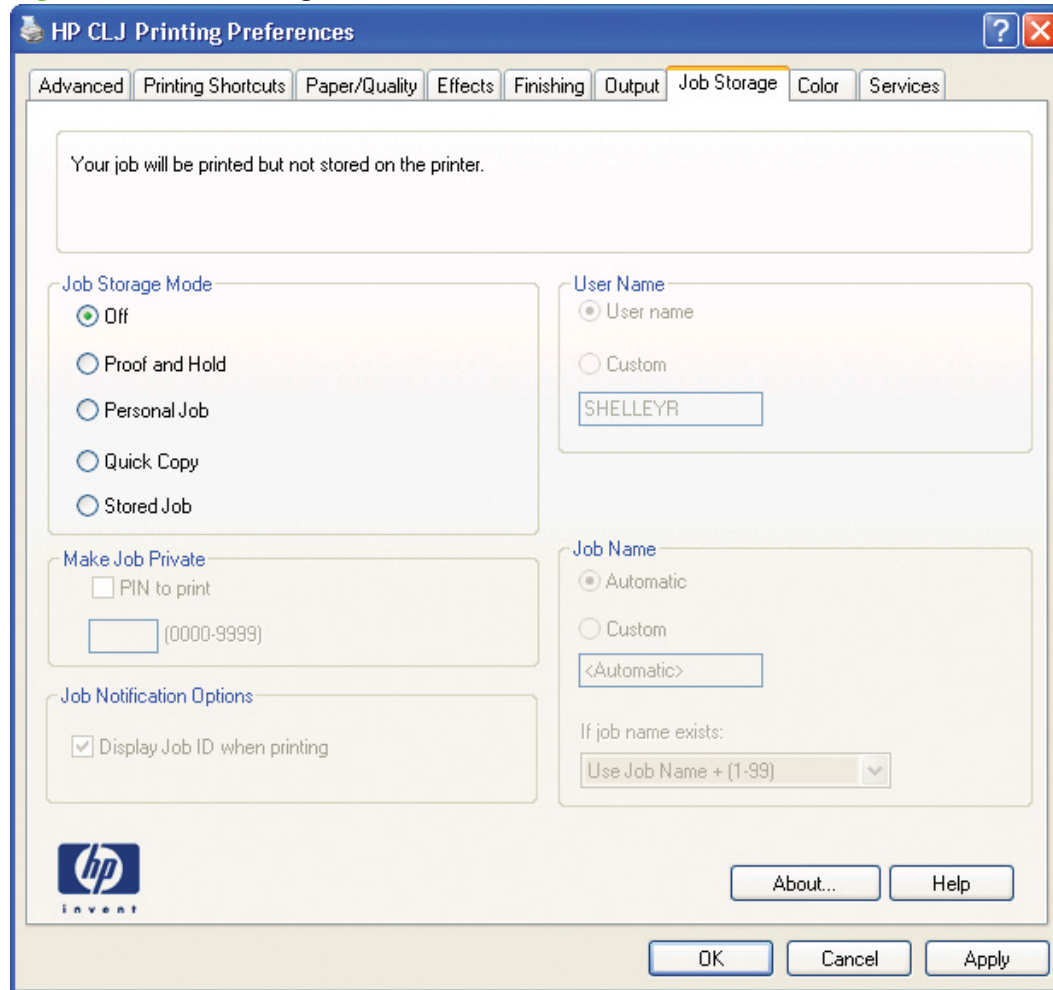
 **NOTE:** This product comes with a hard disk installed on all models of the product.

There are four **Job Storage Mode** settings:

- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 4-16 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

 **NOTE:** Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also provided here.

- [Status group box](#)
- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [PIN to print](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.

Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is immediately deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.

The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 through 9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is impapertely deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, a printer hard disk must be installed, and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set by using the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, a hard disk must be installed on the product and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the printer hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the product as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored on the printer hard disk, you can print the job at the product control panel.

The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to 4 digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private* stored job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

PIN to print

PIN to print is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

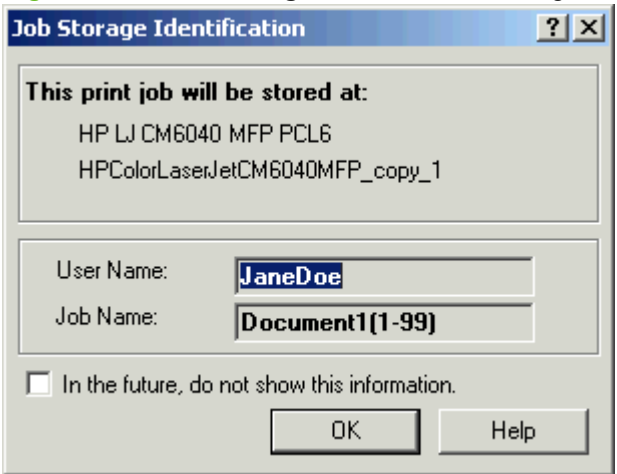
The **PIN to Print** box is available when **Personal Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** option, and then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must type the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

The following figure shows the **Job Storage Identification** dialog box.

Figure 4-17 Job Storage Identification dialog box



User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the product control panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control panel display. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When you store a print job, you can create a print job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job will overwrite the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-99)**. After you create the print job name, or when one is created automatically, the product software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Release a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▼ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▼ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **PRINT** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

8. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the number of copies to print.
9. Press **select** ✓ to print the job.

Delete a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the printer hard disk. You can do this from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **DELETE** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

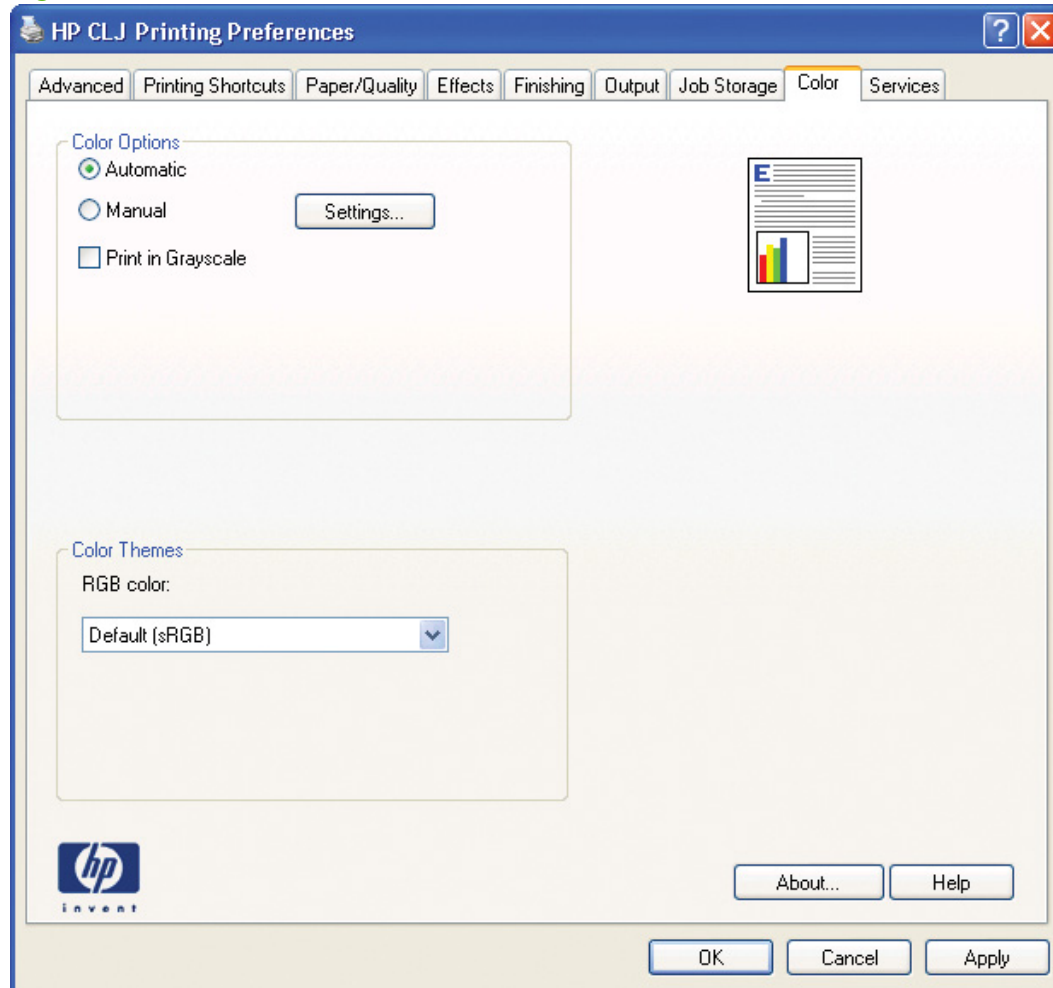
8. Press **select** ✓ to delete the job.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#),

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-18 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

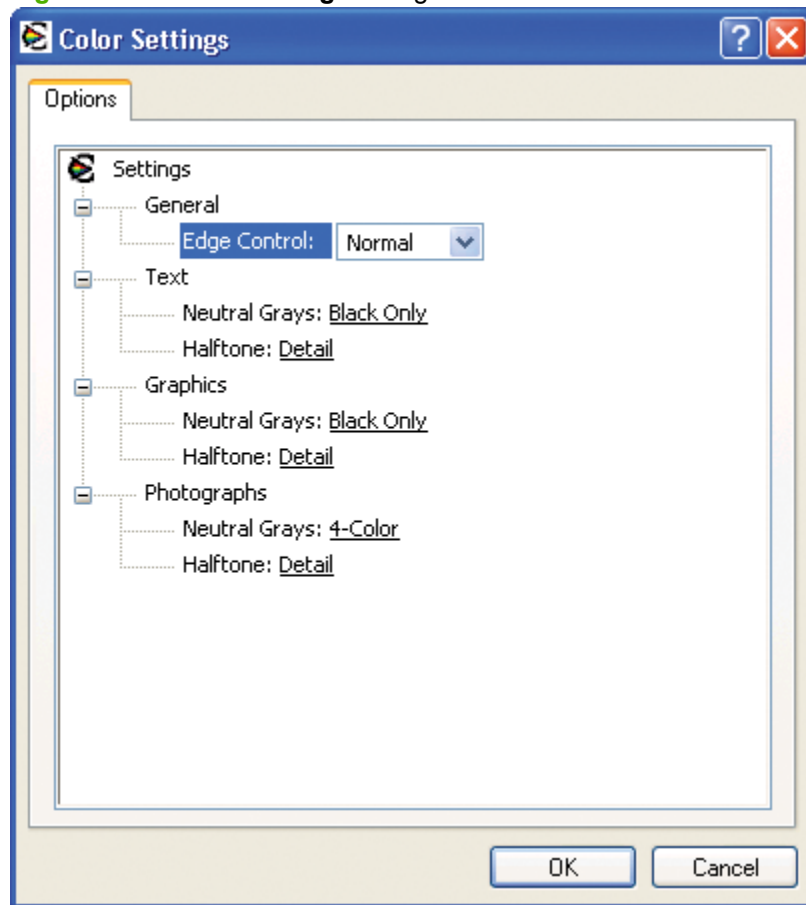
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click **Settings**. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with Custom settings.

Figure 4-19 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

The following settings apply to text, graphics, and photographs for color settings.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create millions of colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The Color Themes group box contains the following **RGB color** options, which determines how colors are rendered:

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .EPS files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (AdobeRGB 1998)** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

None

This option allows the printer to accept RGB data directly from the application.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 9500 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_firmware or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

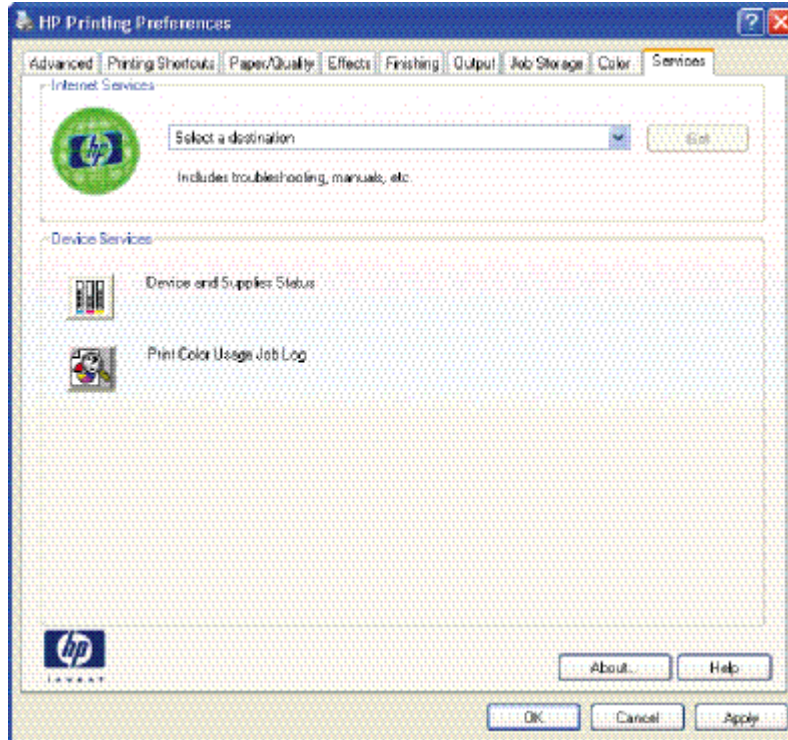
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Services** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 139](#).

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-20 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)
- [Device services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product support.
- **Product manuals.** View or download HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check your print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Color printing access/usage.** Find information about enabling and disabling color printing and tracking color print-job usage.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product supplies.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device services

Click the **Device and Supplies** status icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS, which shows supply levels and control panel status.

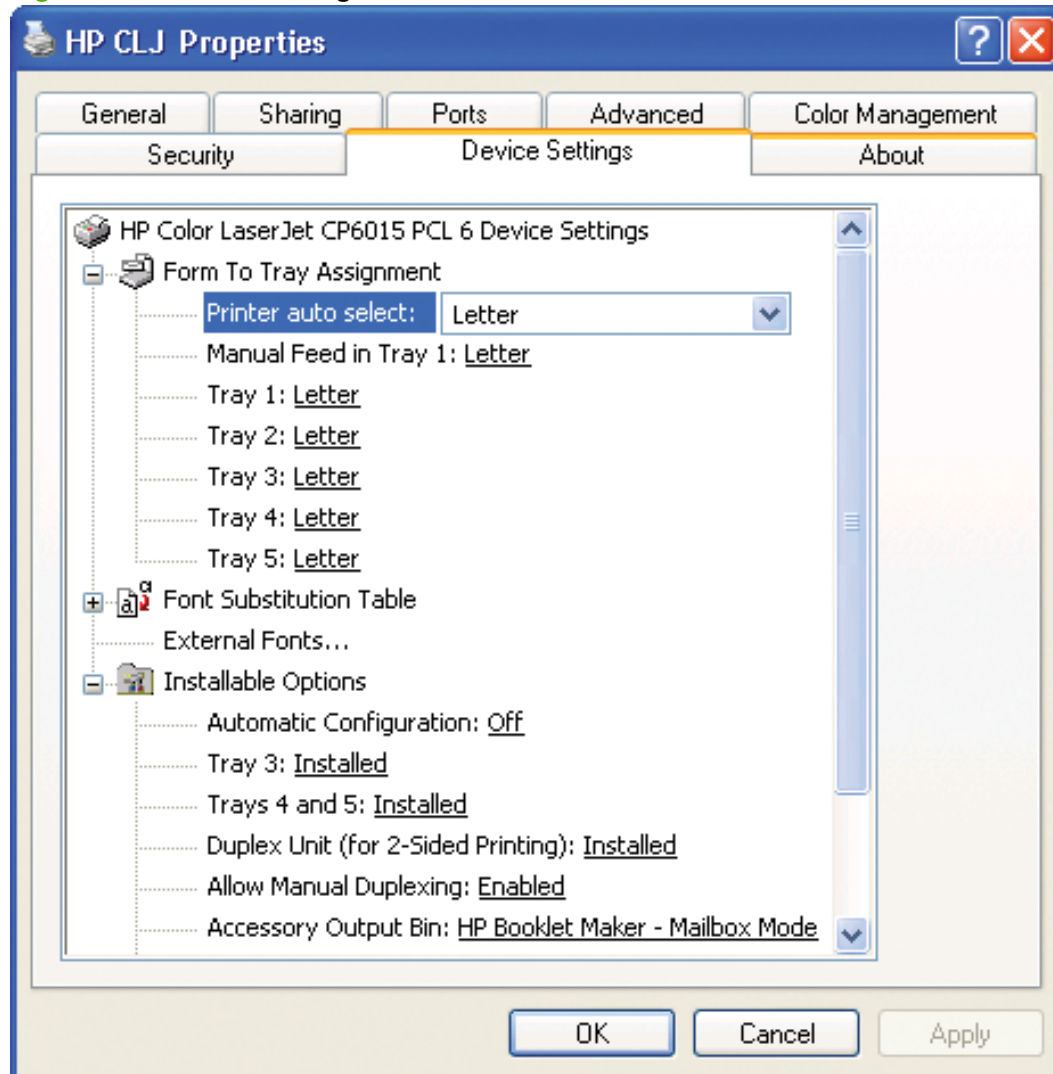
Click the **Print color usage job log** icon to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and applications that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product.

Device Settings tab features

NOTE: The **Device Settings** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 140](#).

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab.

Figure 4-21 Device Settings tab



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

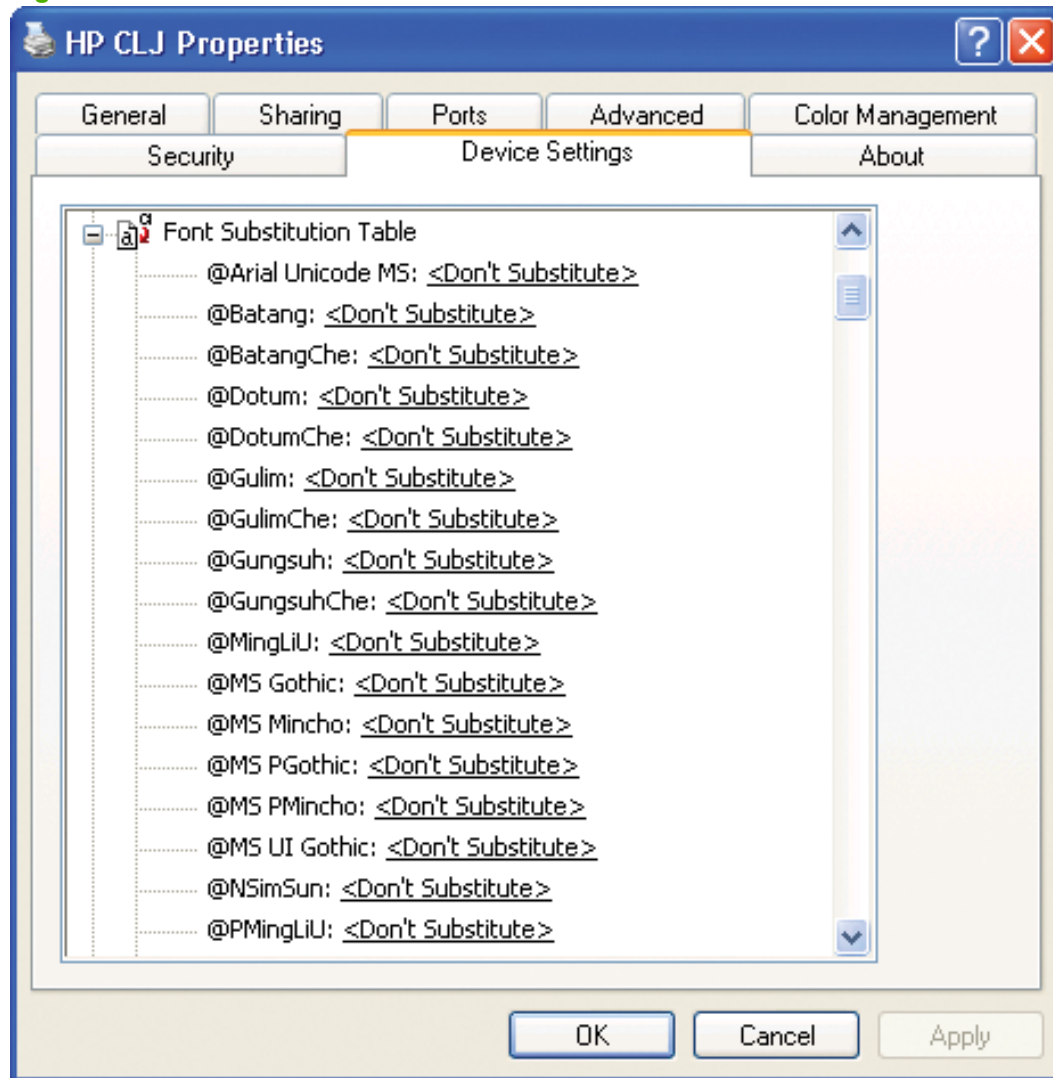
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to change the TrueType to printer font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-product font mappings.

Figure 4-22 Font Substitution Table

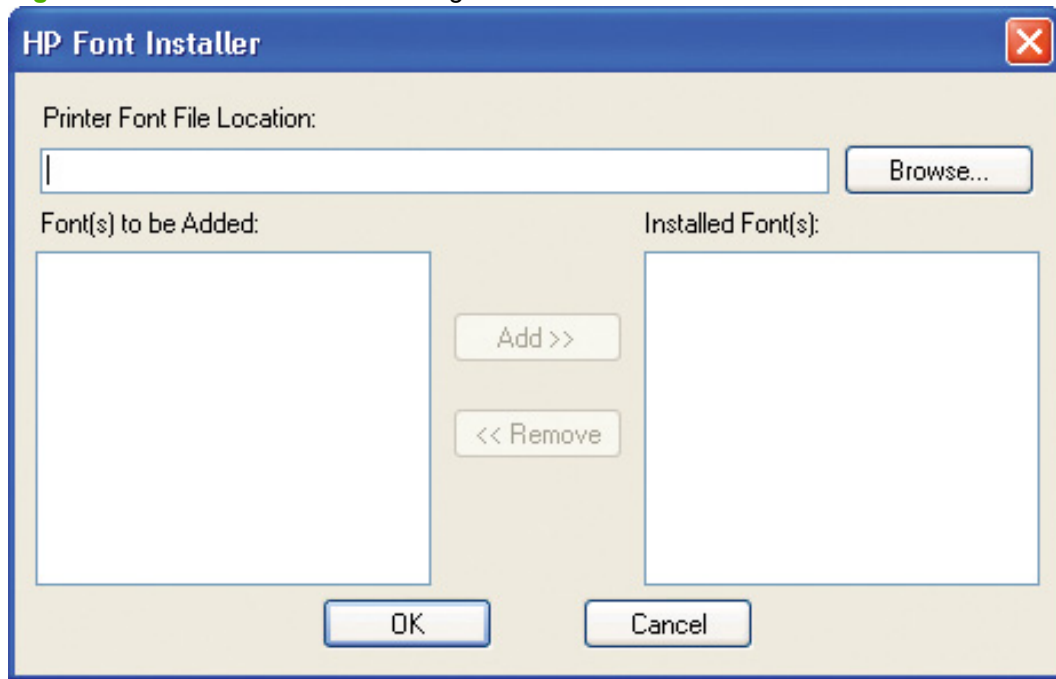


External Fonts

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-23 HP Font Installer dialog box



Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
7. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
8. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
8. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Automatic Configuration](#)
- [Tray 3](#)
- [Tray 4](#)
- [Tray 5](#)
- [Duplex Unit \(for 2-Sided Printing\)](#)
- [Allow Manual Duplexing](#)
- [Accessory Output Bin](#)
- [Printer Memory](#)
- [Printer Hard Disk](#)
- [Job Storage](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.

If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

Tray 3

This control specifies whether you have tray 3, an additional 500-sheet tray, installed on the product. Tray 3 comes standard on the product.

 **NOTE:** Tray 3 is always installed.

Tray 4

This control specifies whether you have tray 4, additional 500-sheet trays, installed on the product. Tray 4 comes standard on the HP Color LaserJet CM6040f MFP.

Tray 5

This control specifies whether you have tray 5, additional 500-sheet trays, installed on the product. Tray 5 comes standard on the HP Color LaserJet CM6040f MFP.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)

All of the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product models come with a duplex unit installed.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series product supports smart duplexing. The product uses the smart duplexing feature to detect information on both sides of the print job pages and only runs the pages through the duplexing unit if printable information appears on the second side of the page.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to print on both sides of any supported size and most types of paper (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels). To use this feature, you must reinsert the paper stack into the input tray to print the second side. The product pauses while you make this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default.

Accessory Output Bin

This control specifies whether you have any accessory output devices installed on your product. The following are available accessory output devices:

- **HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker – Mailbox Mode**
- **HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker – Function Separator Mode**
- **HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker – Stacker Mode**
- **HP Booklet Maker – Mailbox Mode**
- **HP Booklet Maker – Stacker Mode**

Printer Memory

This control has the following settings:

- 768 MB
- 896 MB
- 1024 MB

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is enabled, the **Job Storage** option and the **Mopier Mode** are enabled in the print driver. Use the **Job Storage** option to store print jobs and then print them later from the control panel. The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job.



NOTE: This option is always installed.

Job Storage

When **Job Storage** is enabled, the product can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel.

Job Separator

Use this control to specify whether a print job identifier page should be printed between print jobs.

See **Preferences, Finishing Tab** for more information.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once and then storing it in memory or on the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode:** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 Print Driver, copying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When mopier mode is enabled, copying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJL) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable mopier mode, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the copying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Copying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Copying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The copying mode is selected by default in the driver and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, **Expected result**, shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

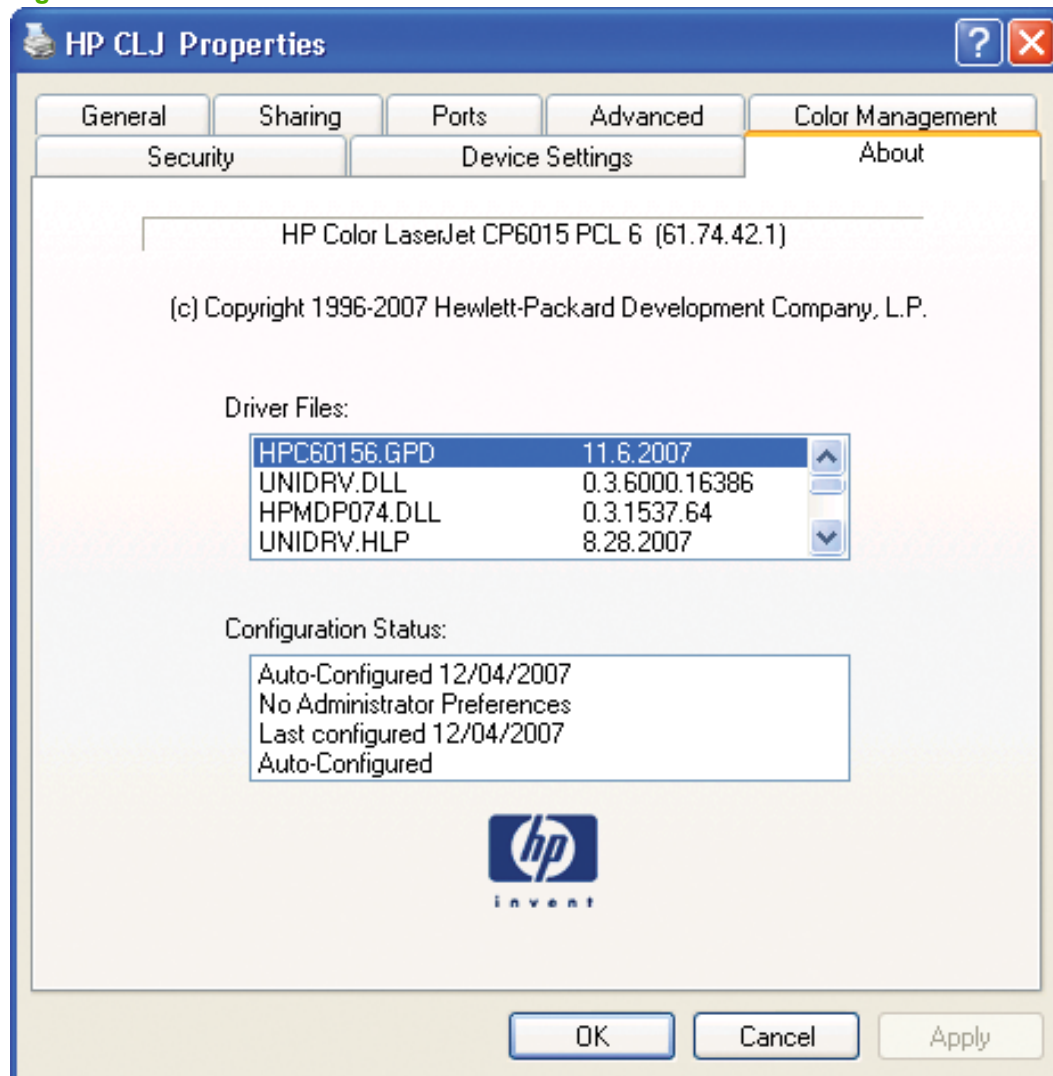
About tab features

 **NOTE:** The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 140](#).

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about

each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-24 About tab



The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is auto-configured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

5 Macintosh software and utilities

- [Supported operating systems for Macintosh](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Macintosh install and uninstall instructions](#)
- [Macintosh HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Use features in the Macintosh printer driver](#)

Supported operating systems for Macintosh

The product supports the following Macintosh operating systems:

- Mac OS X V10.2.8, V10.3, V10.4, V10.5 and later



NOTE: For Mac OS X V10.4 and later, PPC and Intel Core Processor Macs are supported.

Macintosh system requirements

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5, or Intel Core processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 32 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

Macintosh printing-system software

The printing-system software for Macintosh is composed of an HP-created Postscript (PS) printer definition file (PPD) and a printer dialog extension (PDE) file that work together with the Macintosh OS printing system. These files are used by the Macintosh OS printing system to determine default printer-driver settings and to allow the user to select between the various print options and settings. An HP-supplied Macintosh printer configuration utility is provided, which allows the user to access the embedded Web server (EWS) for additional configuration and product status monitoring. The following are provided on the Admin CD:

- The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh
- Install notes (Readme file)

The following components are installed by the HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh:

- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PPD
- HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series PDE
- HP USB EWS Gateway
- HP Printer Utility
- HP Uninstaller for the HP Printer Utility and HP USB EWS Gateway

 **NOTE:** Document filenames on your CD may reference either “HP Color LaserJet CM6030 MFP” or “HP Color LaserJet CM6040 MFP” interchangeably; the references are applicable to either product.

- [Supported printer drivers for Macintosh](#)
- [Priority for print settings for Macintosh](#)
- [Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh](#)
- [Software for Macintosh computers](#)
- [Availability](#)

Supported printer drivers for Macintosh

The HP installer provides postscript Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple postscript printer drivers, provide access to device features. Use the Apple postscript printer driver that comes with the computer.

Priority for print settings for Macintosh

Changes to print settings are prioritized depending on where the changes are made:

 **NOTE:** The names of commands and dialog boxes might vary depending on your software program.

- **Page Setup dialog box:** Click **Page Setup** or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed here might override settings changed anywhere else.
- **Print dialog box:** Click **Print**, **Print Setup**, or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in to open this dialog box. Settings changed in the **Print** dialog box have a lower priority and do *not* override changes made in the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- **Default printer driver settings:** The default printer driver settings determine the settings used in all print jobs, *unless* settings are changed in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Printer Properties** dialog boxes.
- **Printer control panel settings:** Settings changed at the printer control panel have a lower priority than changes made anywhere else.

Change printer-driver settings for Macintosh

Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	Change the default settings for all print jobs	Change the product configuration settings
1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various menus.	1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various menus. 3. On the Presets menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.	Mac OS X V10.2.8 1. In the Finder, on the Go menu, click Applications. 2. Open Utilities, and then open Print Center. 3. Click on the print queue. 4. On the Printers menu, click Configure. 5. Click the Installable Options menu. NOTE: Configuration settings might not be available in Classic mode. Mac OS X V10.3 or Mac OS X V10.4 1. From the Apple menu, click System Preferences and then Print & Fax. 2. Click Printer Setup. 3. Click the Installable Options menu. Mac OS X V10.5 1. From the Apple menu, click System Preferences and then Print & Fax. 2. Click Options & Supplies.

Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	Change the default settings for all print jobs	Change the product configuration settings
		- Click the Driver menu. - Select the driver from the list, and configure the installed options.

Software for Macintosh computers

HP Printer Utility

Use the HP Printer Utility to set up product features that are not available in the printer driver.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when the product uses a universal serial bus (USB) cable or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network.

Open the HP Printer Utility

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.2.8

- Open the Finder, and then click **Applications**.
- Click **Library**, and then click **Printers**.
- Click **HP**, and then click **Utilities**.
- Double-click **HP Printer Selector** to open the HP Printer Selector.
- Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

Open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X V10.3 and V10.4

- Open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.
 - Select the product that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.
1. From the **Printer** menu, click **Printer Utility**.
- or -
2. From the **Print Queue**, click the **Utility** icon.

HP Printer Utility features

The HP Printer Utility consists of pages that you open by clicking in the **Configuration Settings** list. The following table describes the tasks that you can perform from these pages.

Table 5-1 Titles

Item	Description
Supplies Status	Information and Support setting) Shows the device supplies status and provides links for online supplies ordering.
Device Information	Information and Support setting) Displays information about the product such as version number and serial number.

Table 5-1 Titles (continued)

Item	Description
HP Support	Information and Support setting) Displays buttons that link to HP Online Support, Shop for Supplies, and Online Registration.
Color Usage	Information and Support setting) Displays information about color usage by the product.
File Upload	Information and Support setting) Transfers files from the computer to the device.
Firmware Update	Information and Support setting) Transfers updated firmware files from the computer to the device.
Upload Fonts	Information and Support setting) Transfers font files from the computer to the device.
Duplex Mode	Printer setting) Turns on the automatic two-sided printing mode.
Trays Configuration	Printer setting) Changes the default tray settings.
Lock Resources	Printer setting) Locks or unlocks storage products, such as a hard disk.
Stored Jobs	Printer setting) Manages print jobs that are stored on the device hard disk.
E-mail Alerts	Printer setting) Configures the device to send e-mail notices for certain events.
Network Settings	Printer setting) Provides the ability to adjust network settings.
Supplies Management	Printer setting) Provides the ability to check product supply levels and order new supplies.
Project Direct Ports	Printer setting) Displays information about ports and port settings for the product.
Bonjour Settings	Printer setting) Provides the ability to turn on or off Bonjour support or change the device service name that is listed on a network.
Additional Settings	Printer setting) Provides access to the embedded Web server.
Restrict Color	Printer setting) Provides the ability to set the color job printing behavior.
Output Devices	Printer setting) Provides information about output devices connected to the product.

Embedded Web server

The product is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about device and network activities. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Administrator CD.

Availability

This STR provides information about the availability of the printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CDs is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases. See the HP Proactive support link on the Download Drivers and Software page.

 **NOTE:** This STR describes drivers that are shipped on the Administrator printing-system software CD that comes with the product. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The printing-system software is available for download at the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_software or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_software

In-box printing-system software CDs

Two CDs are included in-box with the product.

- **Administrator CD.** Contains the printing-system installer and administrator software, administrator documentation, the Animated Getting Started Guide, the Installer Customization Wizard, and links to the HP Universal Print Drivers (UPDs) on the Web.
- **User CD.** Contains job aids, product demonstrations and simulations, the control panel wall poster, fax guides, and support information.

The CDs are divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- Windows
- Macintosh

The files in each partition of the Administrator CD include documentation files and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system software components. Use the Administrator CD to install the printing-system software.

- [Macintosh partition](#)
- [CD versions](#)

Macintosh partition

The HP Macintosh printing-system software files reside in the Macintosh partition. The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh is at the root of the Macintosh CD partition. The user manuals (.PDF) are grouped by language and are in the Manuals directory on the Macintosh partition of the software CDs.

CD versions

The Administrator software CD is available in a single version and contains the printing-system software in various languages:

- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Español)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- FR = French (Français)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- JA = Japanese
- KO = Korean

- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

Macintosh install and uninstall instructions

- [Install the Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Remove software from Macintosh operating systems](#)

Install the Macintosh printing-system software

On a Macintosh computer, the printing-system software installation procedures are the same for a network administrator, a network client, or a single user. Install the printing-system software on any computer that has access rights to the product. The computer user must also have administrative rights on the computer to install the printing-system software.

- [General installation for Macintosh operating systems](#)
- [Detailed Mac OS X installation](#)
- [Product setup](#)

General installation for Macintosh operating systems

1. If you are connecting the product to a network, connect the network cable to the network port. If you are connecting the product to a computer using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.
2. Insert the Administrator software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen does not open automatically when the CD is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the product CD image on the desktop to open the installer browser screen.

3. Double-click the product .MKPG icon to start the printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** In the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen, double-click the **Manuals** icon to gain access to the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guide*.

4. The **Introduction** dialog box appears. Click **Continue** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** When the printing-system software is installing, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer, which can take up to 1 minute. During this time, the installer might appear to be stalled.

5. When the printing-system software installation is complete, click **Close**.
6. Continue with the steps for setting up a product.

The software program that you use to finish setting up the product varies by operating system. The following table shows the product setup tools that are available.

Table 5-2 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems

Operating system	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.2.8	x		
Mac OS X V10.3		x	x

Table 5-2 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems (continued)

Operating system	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.4		x	x
Mac OS X V10.5 and later		x	x

Detailed Mac OS X installation

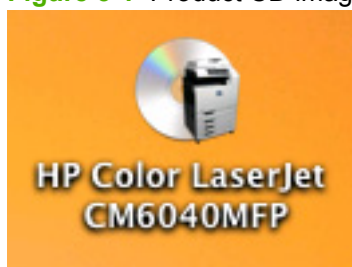
This section provides information about the Macintosh printing-system software installation dialog-box sequence for the **Easy Install** type, which is the typical type of printing-system software installation.

 **NOTE:** If you are connecting the product to a network, connect the network cable to the network port. If you are connecting the product to a computer using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.

Insert the Administrator software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

If the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen does not open automatically when the CD is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the product CD image on the desktop to open the installer browser screen.

Figure 5-1 Product CD image



The **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen appears.

Figure 5-2 HP LaserJet installer browser screen

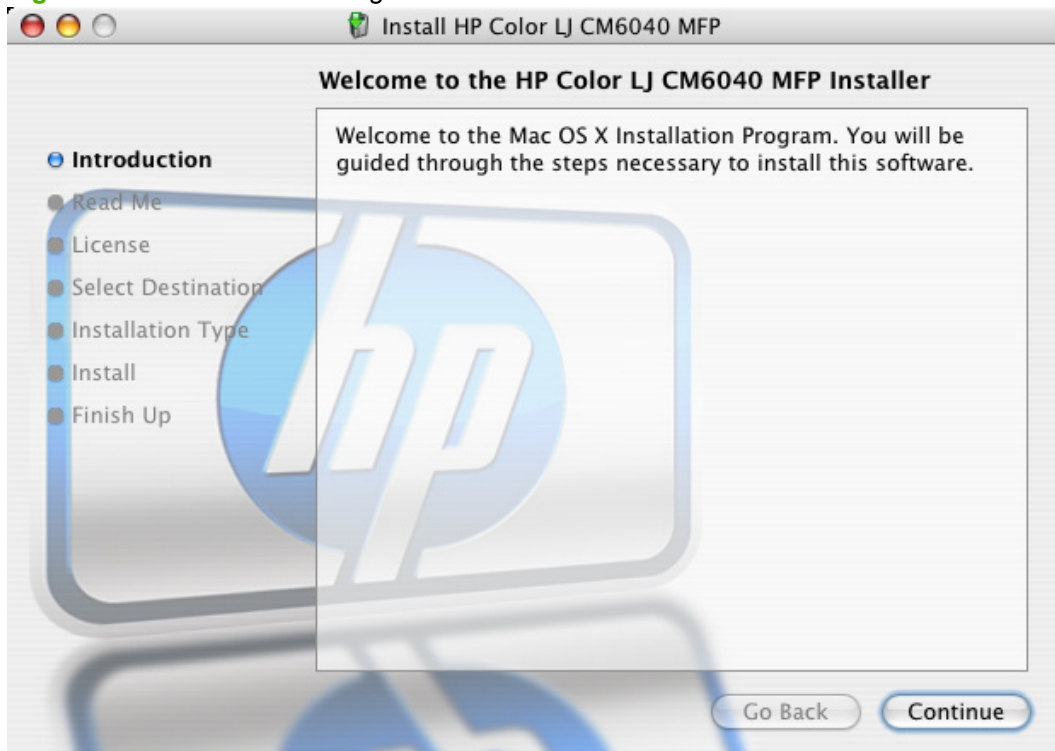


In the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen, double-click the product .MKPG icon. This begins the printing-system installation.

 **NOTE:** The file name displayed on your **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen may be different than the file name displayed in the above figure.

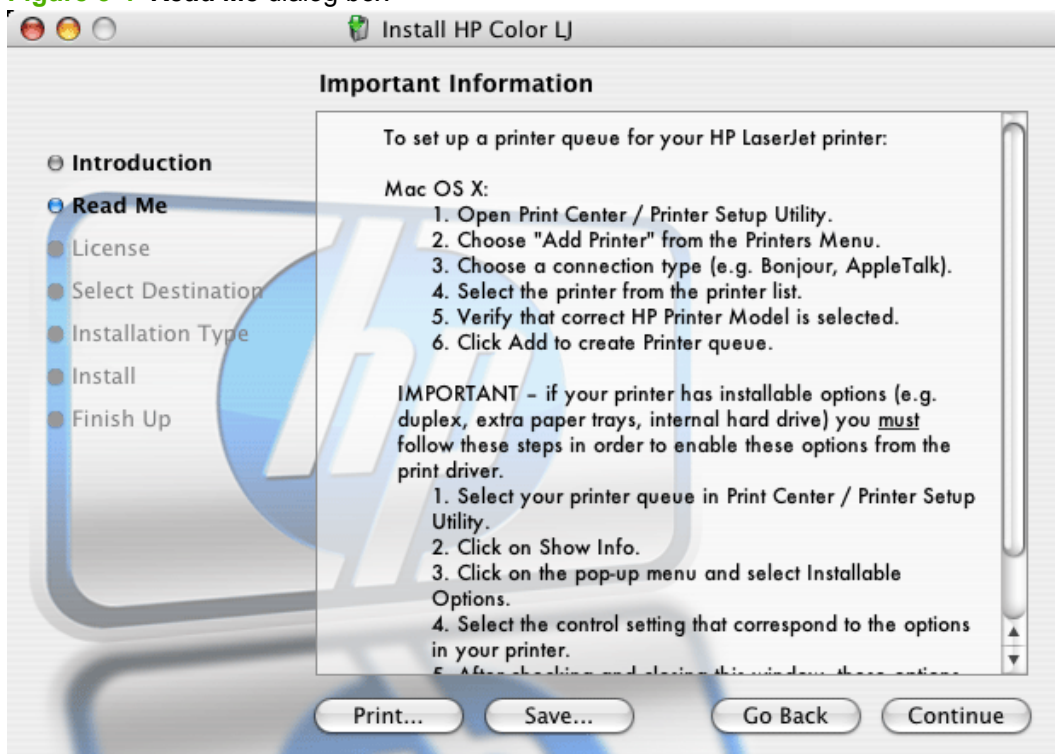
NOTE: In the **HP LaserJet** installer browser screen, double-click the **Manuals** icon to gain access to the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Series User Guide*.

Figure 5-3 Introduction dialog box



Click **Continue**. The **ReadMe** dialog box appears.

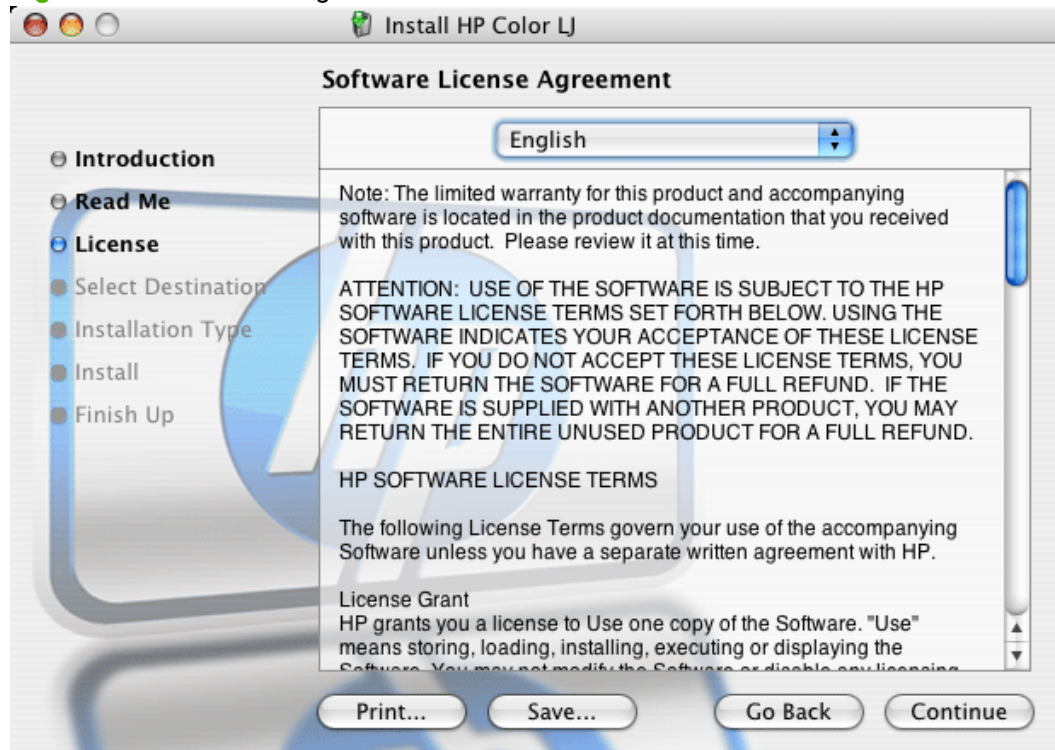
Figure 5-4 Read Me dialog box



 **NOTE:** After installing the printing-system software, the product must be set up. This ReadMe file provides information for completing the product set up.

Save or print the Read Me file by clicking **Save** or **Print**, Read the Read Me file, and then click **Continue**. The **License** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-5 License dialog box



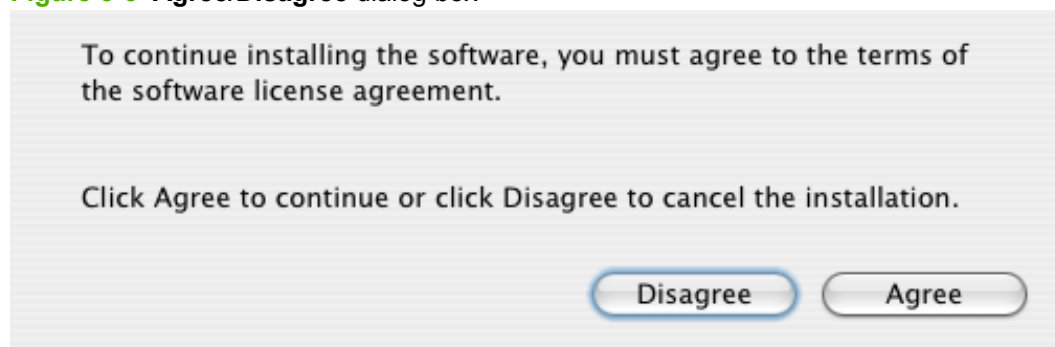
Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box and print a copy of the license agreement.

Click **Save** to open the system **Save** dialog box and save the license agreement to disk.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Read the software-license agreement and then click **Continue**. The **Agree/Disagree** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-6 Agree/Disagree dialog box



Click **Disagree** to end the installation and close the installer.

Click **Agree** to continue the installation. The **Select Destination** dialog box appears.

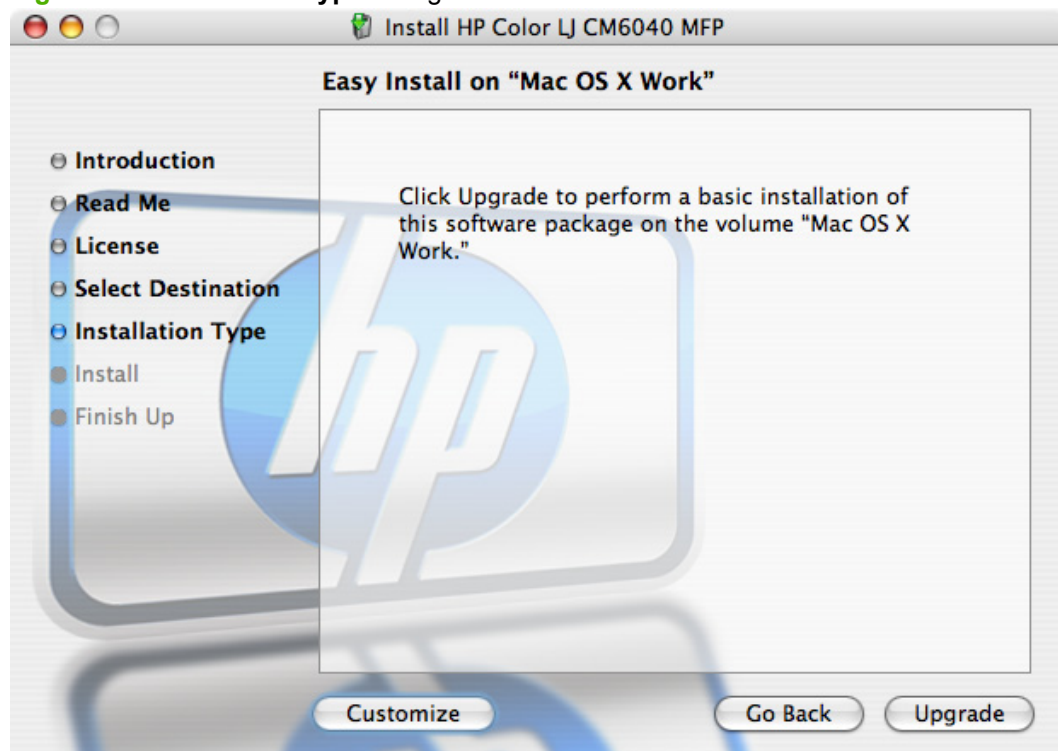
Figure 5-7 Select Destination dialog box



Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous screen.

Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-8 Installation Type dialog box

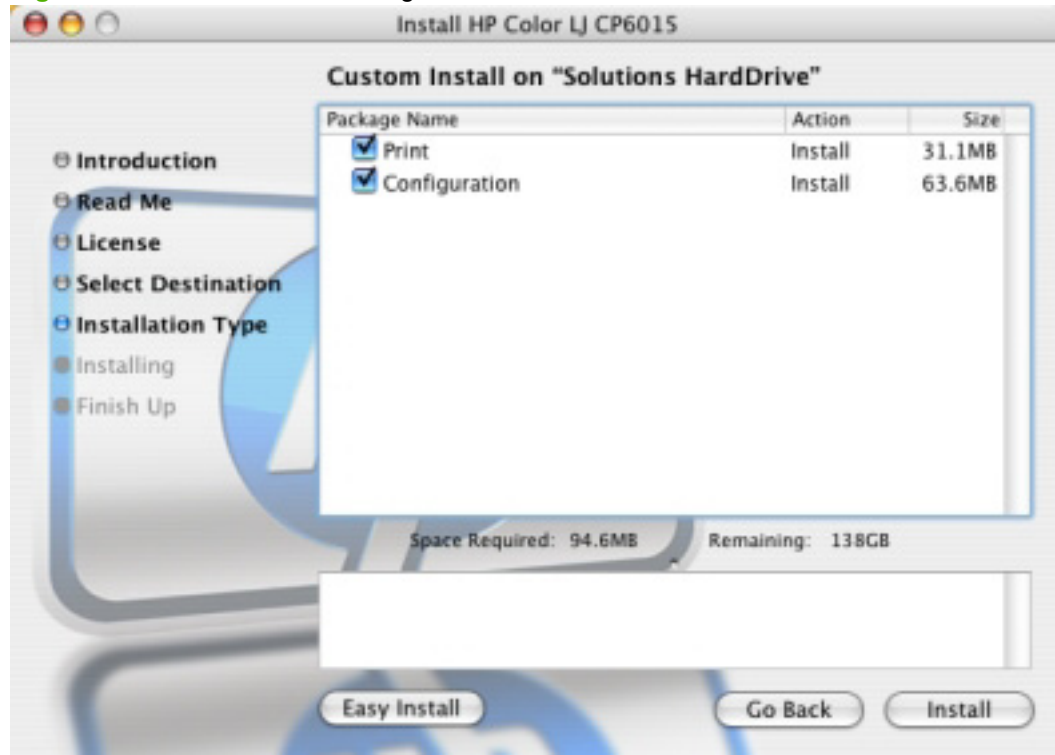


The default option in the drop-down menu at the top of the screen is **Easy Install**. You can also click **Customize** in the same dialog box to go to the **Custom Install** dialog box.

Click **Upgrade** to start the installation on the selected disk.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

Figure 5-9 Custom Install dialog box



Use the check boxes in the **Package Name** list to select the printing-system components to install.

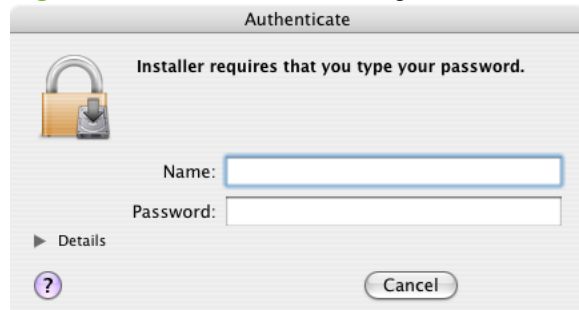
Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk.

 **NOTE:** If the printing-system software has been installed previously on the computer, the Action column for the component list and the button to start the installation on the selected disk change to **Upgrade**.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

The **Authenticate** dialog box appears.

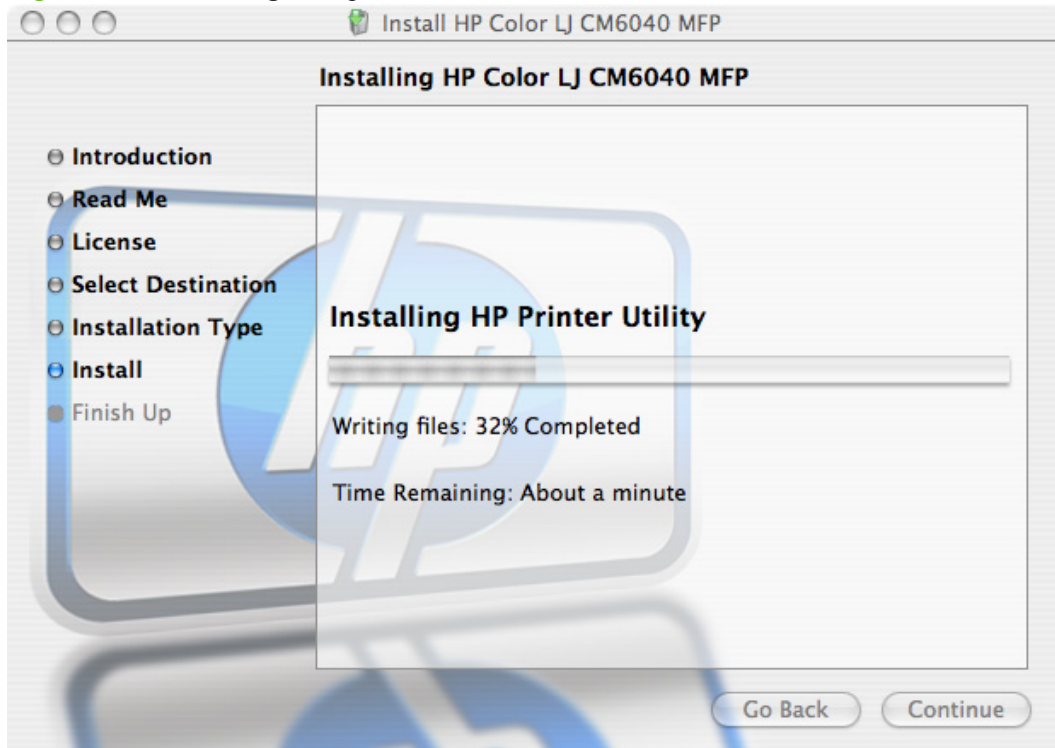
Figure 5-10 Authenticate dialog box



Type the correct administrator name and password, and then click **OK** to continue. The **Installing** dialog box appears.

Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

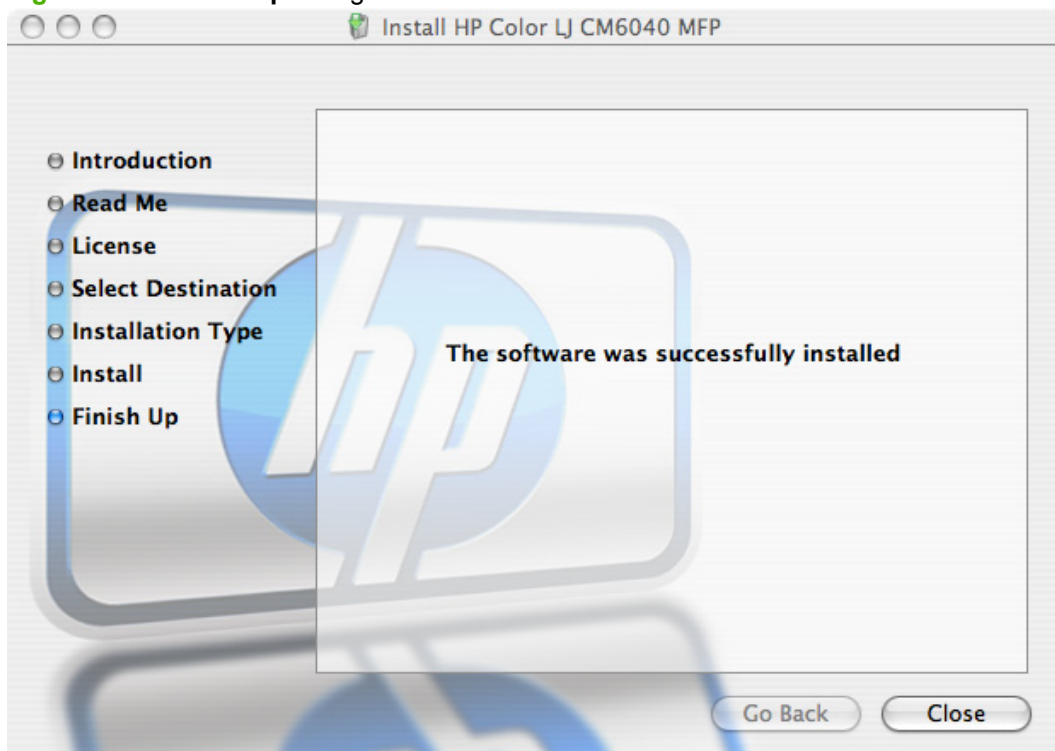
Figure 5-11 Installing dialog box



The **Installing** dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required.

When the installation is complete, the **Finish Up** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-12 Finish Up dialog box



Click **Close** to exit the installer.



NOTE: After installing the printing-system software, the product must be set up.

Product setup

- [Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.4](#)
- [Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.3](#)
- [Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.2.8](#)
- [Troubleshooting the product setup](#)

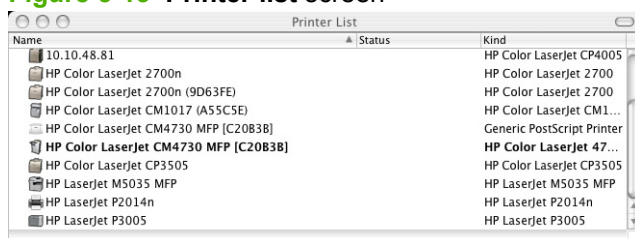
Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.4

Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.

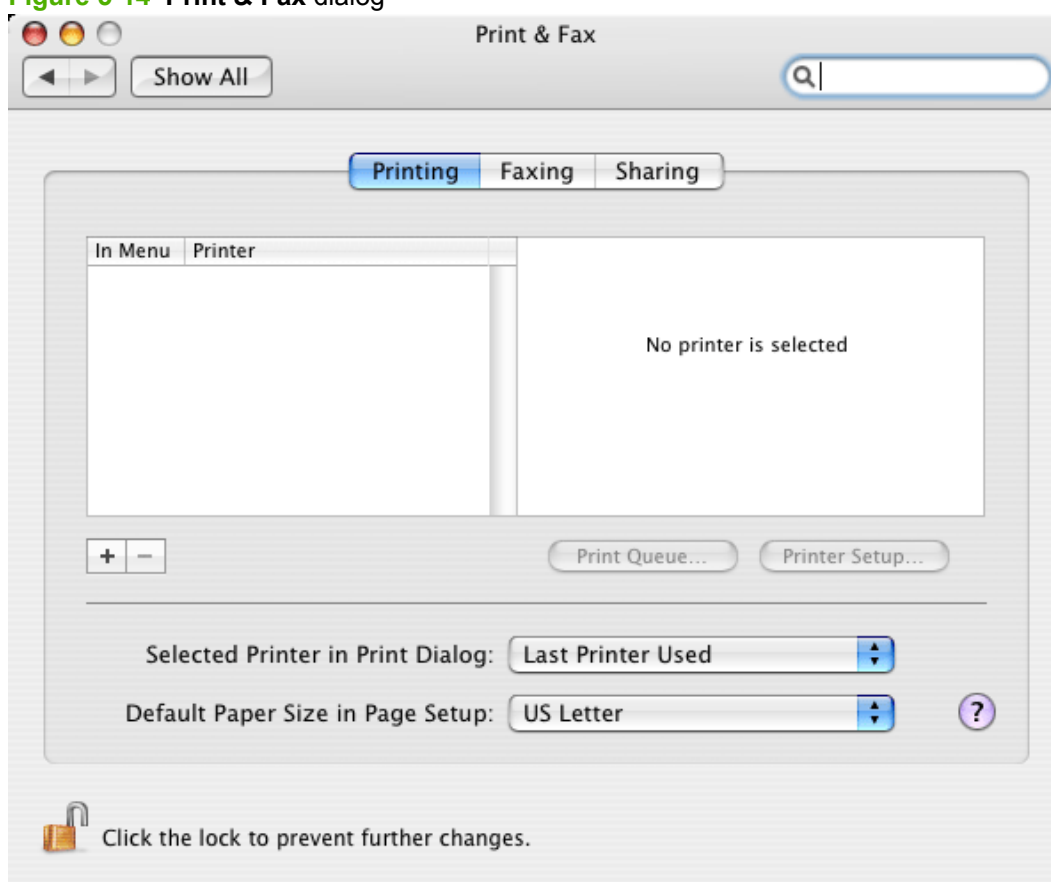
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**. The **Printer List** screen appears. The following figure is an example of a typical **Printer List** screen on a computer that has multiple products installed.

Figure 5-13 Printer list screen



You can also configure the product using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences**. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**.

Figure 5-14 Print & Fax dialog



3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Kind** column in the printer list, or the **Kind** field in the **Print & Fax** screen, should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** (or the **+** button in the **Print & Fax** utility) to open the **Printer Browser** screen.

5. You can use either Bonjour or IP Printing for the network connection.

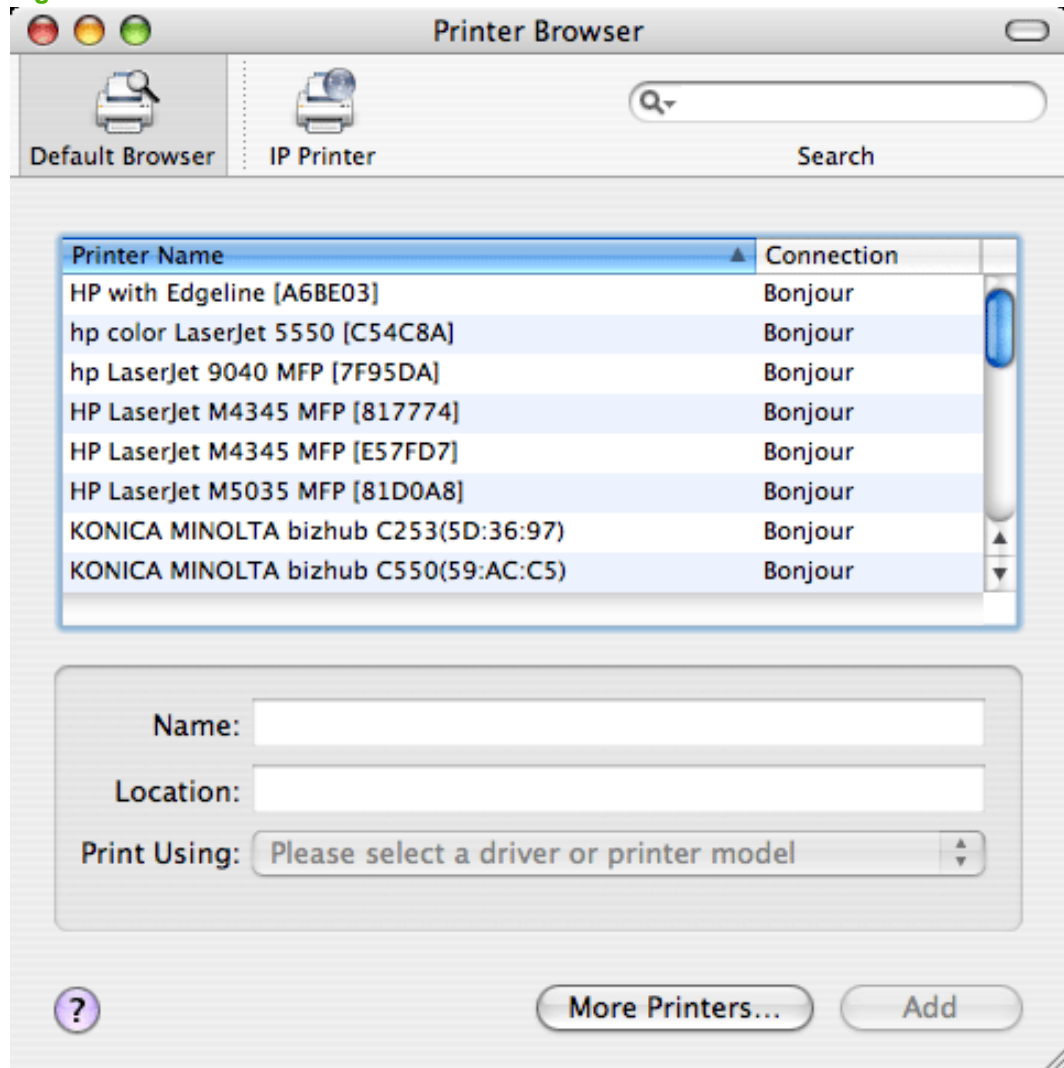
 **NOTE:** Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.

Figure 5-15 Default Browser tab



- b. Select the product from the list. The software verifies that the product is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the product.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network, then try turning the product off and then on again. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** pull-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

If you want to use the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.

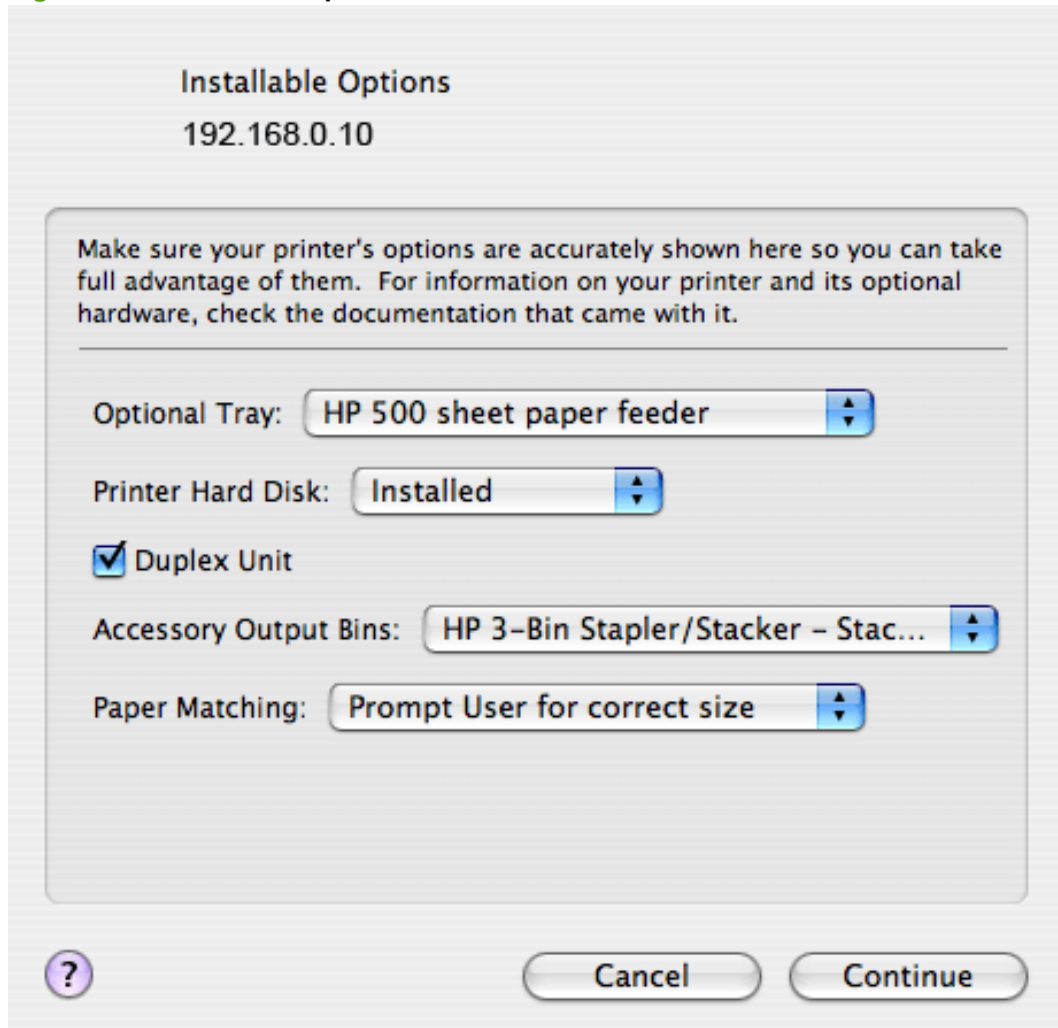
Figure 5-16 Printer Browser – IP Printer tab

The screenshot shows the 'Printer Browser' window with the 'IP Printer' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Mac OS X window controls (red, yellow, green buttons) and a close button. Below the title bar, there are two tabs: 'Default Browser' and 'IP Printer', with the 'IP Printer' tab being active. To the right of the tabs is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and the word 'Search'. The main content area is divided into two sections. The top section contains three fields: 'Protocol:' with a pull-down menu showing 'Internet Printing Protocol - IPP', 'Address:' with a text field and a pull-down arrow, and 'Queue:' with a text field and a pull-down arrow. Below the 'Address:' field is the text 'Enter host name or IP address.' and below the 'Queue:' field is the text 'Leave blank for default queue.' The bottom section contains three fields: 'Name:' with a text field, 'Location:' with a text field, and 'Print Using:' with a pull-down menu showing 'Please select a driver or printer model'. At the bottom of the window, there is a help button (a circle with a question mark) and two buttons: 'More Printers...' and 'Add'.

- b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- c. Print the configuration pages.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.

- iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
 - d. On the first configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - e. The **Name**, **Location**, and **Print Using** information will automatically be filled in. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.

Figure 5-17 Installable Options screen



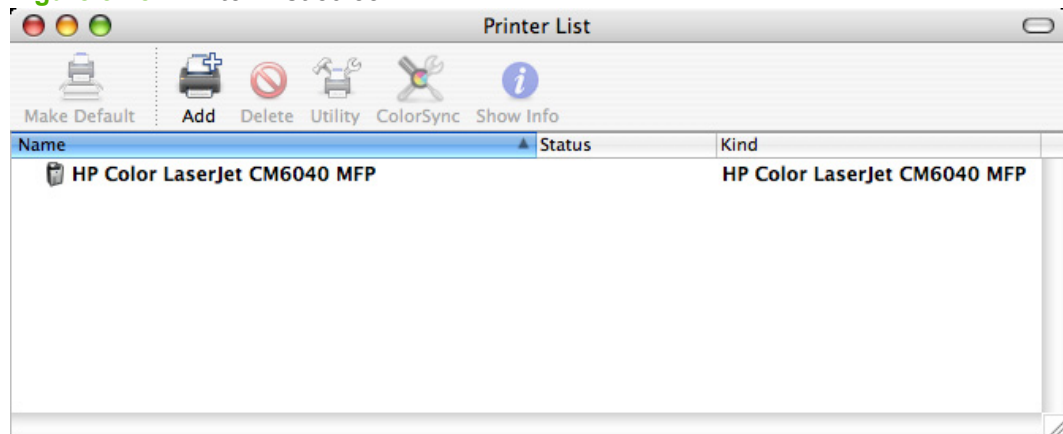
7. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
- **Not Installed**
 - **HP 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**

- **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**
8. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 9. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**

 **NOTE:** There may be additional items in the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu that are not shown in the above figure.

10. After selecting the installable options, click **Continue**. The product name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

Figure 5-18 Printer List screen



Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.3

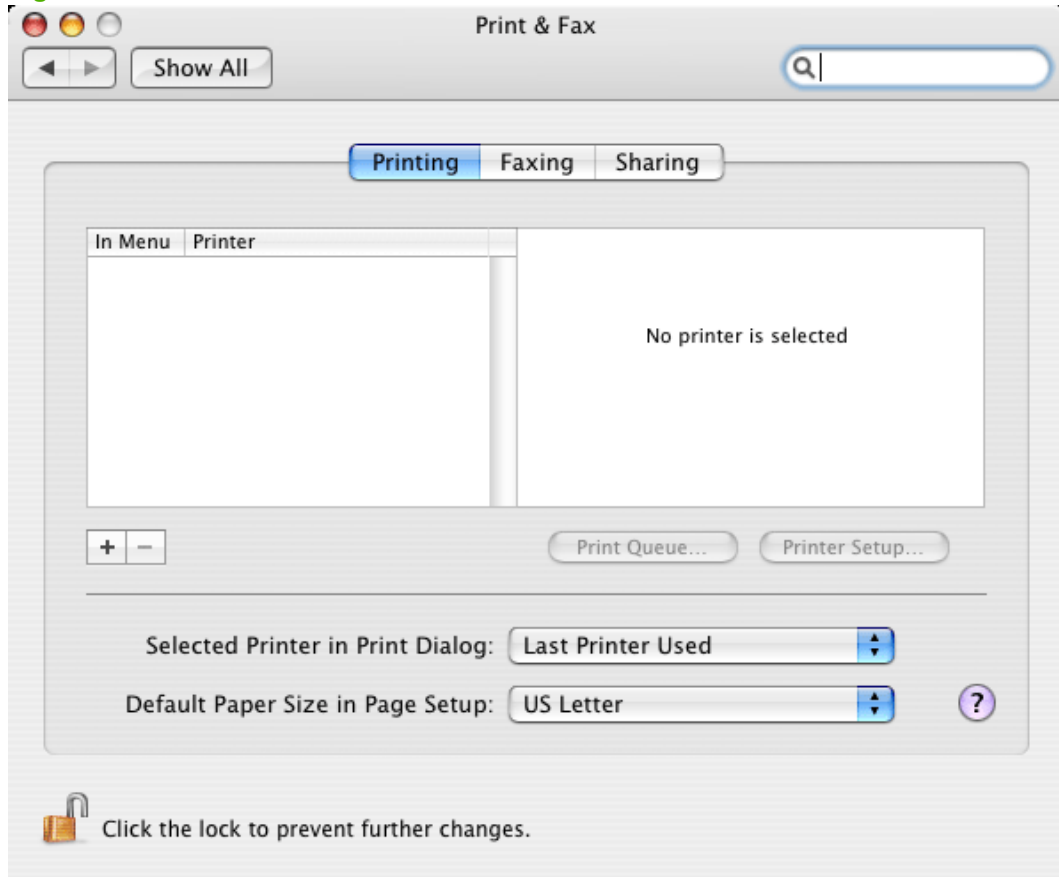
Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.

2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.

You can also configure the product using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences**. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**. In the Print & Fax screen, click the **Printer Setup...** button to see the printer list.

Figure 5-19 Print & Fax screen



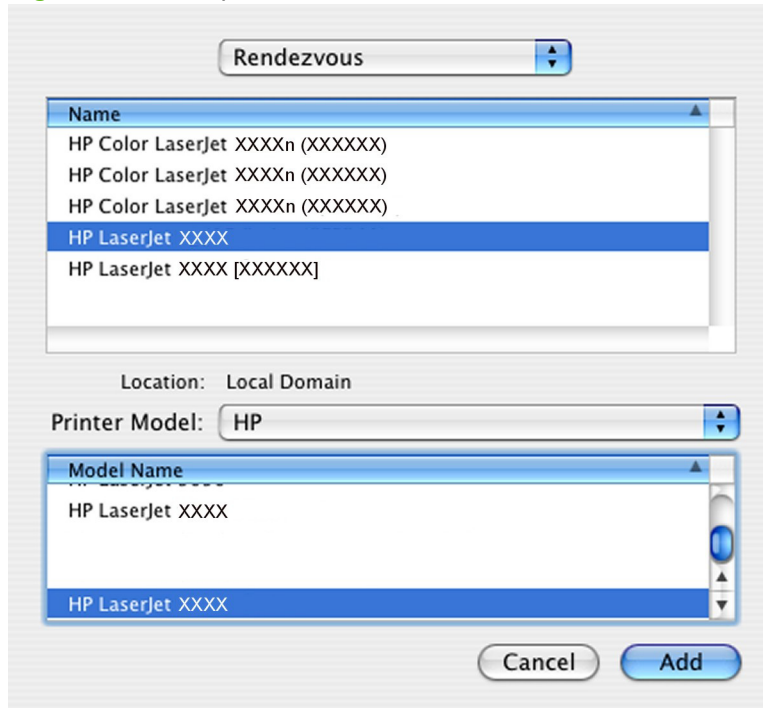
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. (In the Print & Fax screen, click the **Setup Printers...** button to see the printer list.) The **Kind** column in the printer list same change as before should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the Product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** (or the **Set Up Printers...** button in the **Print & Fax** screen), and then click **Add** to open the add printer screen.

Figure 5-20 Add printer screen



5. Select the network connection protocol in the top pull-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.

 **NOTE:** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the product in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

 **NOTE:** If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the product off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

 **NOTE:** If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pull-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
 - b. Print the product configuration pages.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.
 - iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
 - v. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
 - c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - d. Select the **Printer Model** and select the product in the **Model Name** list. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The product appears in the **Printer List**.
 7. To configure installable options such as a duplexing unit or optional paper tray, click **Show Info?** on the printer list and choose **Installable Options** in the pull-down menu.
 8. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Not Installed**
 - **HP 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**
 9. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 10. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
 11. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Setup a product on Mac OS X V10.2.8

Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Print Center**. The **Printer List** screen appears.
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the **Kind** column of the **Printer List** screen. If it does, the product setup is complete.

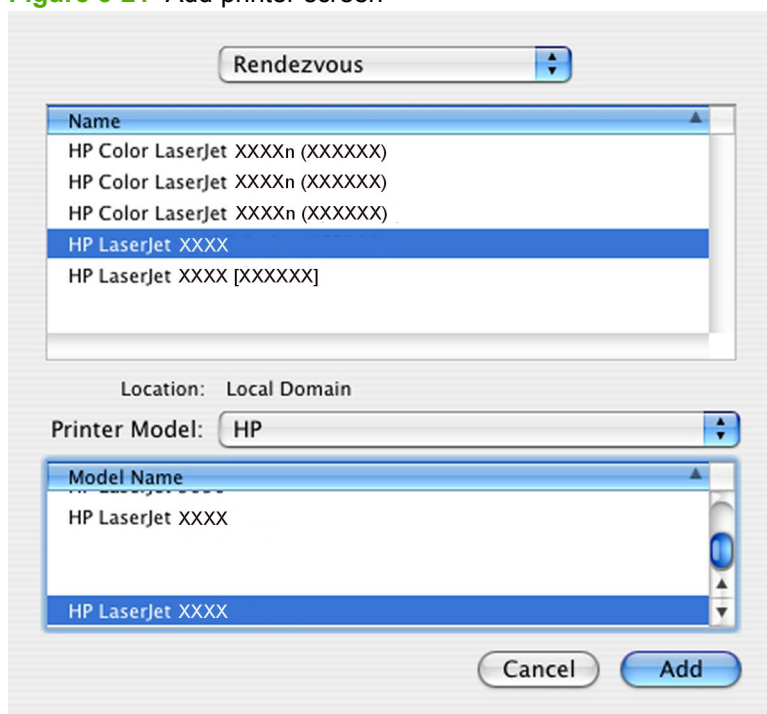
 **NOTE:** If the **Kind** column does not appear on the **Printer List** screen, go to the **View** menu, choose **Columns** and then choose **Kind**.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** column, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps:

4. Click **Add** to open the **Add printer** screen.

Figure 5-21 Add printer screen



5. Choose the network connection protocol in the top drop-down menu. The two supported protocols are:
 - **Rendezvous.** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.
 - **IP Printing.** IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.
6. If you are using Rendezvous, complete the following step:

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the product in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.



NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the product off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 231](#).

NOTE: If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a PPD file, click the **Printer Model** drop-down menu, choose **HP**, and then choose the PPD file that you want to add. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

Print the product configuration pages.

- a. From the Home screen, touch **Administration**.
 - b. Touch **Information**.
 - c. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - d. Touch **Print**.
 - e. On the second configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer's Address** field.
 - f. Choose **Printer Model** and then choose the product in the **Model Name** list.
7. Click **Add**. The product appears in the **Printer List**.
 8. Select the product, go to the **Printers** menu, and choose **Show Info**.
 9. Choose **Installable Options** from the top drop-down menu.
 10. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Not Installed**
 - **HP 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**
 11. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.

12. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:

- **Prompt User for correct size**
- **Nearest Size & Scale**
- **Nearest Size & Crop**

13. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Troubleshooting the product setup

If the product does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Complete each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.

- Verify that the USB or network cable is connected between the product and the computer and that the product is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable. If the computer has more than one USB port, try a different USB port.
- Turn the product off and then back on.
- Turn the computer off and then back on.
- If you are using a USB hub on the computer, disconnect any other USB devices from the hub.

If the wrong PPD appears in the Kind column in the printer list after installation:

1. Unplug the USB cable.
2. Delete the print queue with the incorrect type (for example, Generic PostScript Printer).
3. Reinstall the printing-system software.
4. Turn the computer off and then on.
5. Reconnect the USB cable from the computer to the product.

If these steps do not resolve the problem, delete the incorrect print queue, click **Add**, choose the product from the list, and then browse manually for the product PPD. If this procedure does not resolve the problem, try the following procedure:

1. Open the finder.
2. Select **Applications**.
3. Select **Utilities**.
4. Open the **Printer Setup** utility.
5. Select **Printer to remove**.
6. Select **Printer**.

 **NOTE:** This process removes the printer object from the printer list but does not remove the files from the system. It is recommended to keep the file in the operating system for later use. If you must remove the files, see the following section.

Remove software from Macintosh operating systems

Follow these instructions to remove the Macintosh printing-system software:

1. Browse to the folder containing the PPDs. In Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate language.
2. Choose the product .GZ file and drag it to **Trash**.
3. Empty the **Trash**.

Macintosh HP Printer Utility

The HP Printer Utility is a software program that gives you access to the product in Mac OS X.

The HP Printer Utility is available only in Mac OS X V10.2.8 and later. The HP Printer Utility does not work when it is installed by using the AppleTalk protocol. Use IP, Bonjour, Rendezvous, or a USB connection to enable the HP Printer Utility.

- [Access to the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [HP Support](#)
- [File Upload](#)
- [Update Firmware](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Duplex mode](#)
- [Trays Configuration](#)
- [Lock Resources](#)
- [Stored Jobs](#)
- [E-mail Alerts](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Bonjour Settings](#)
- [Additional Network Settings](#)

Access to the HP Printer Utility

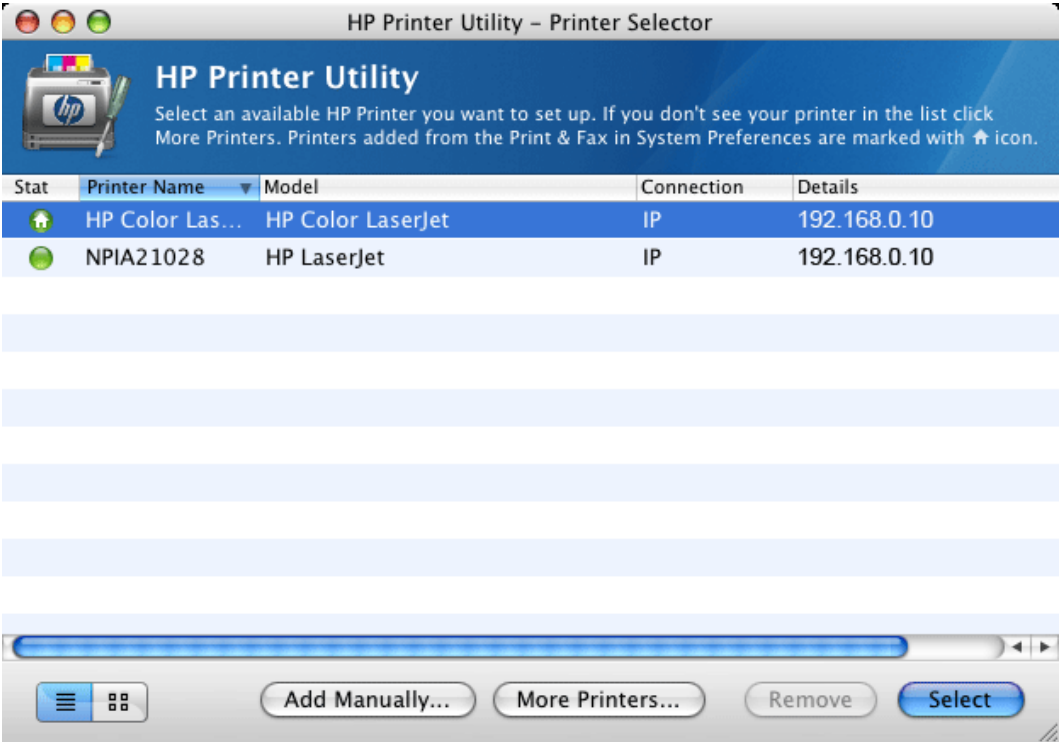
In Mac OS X V10.4 and Mac OS X V10.5, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. On the **Finder** menu, click **Go**.
2. Click **Utilities**.
3. Double-click **HP Printer Selector**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

In Mac OS X V10.3, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

- 1. Switch to Finder.
- 2. Find and double-click **Printers**. The **Printer Selector** screen appears.

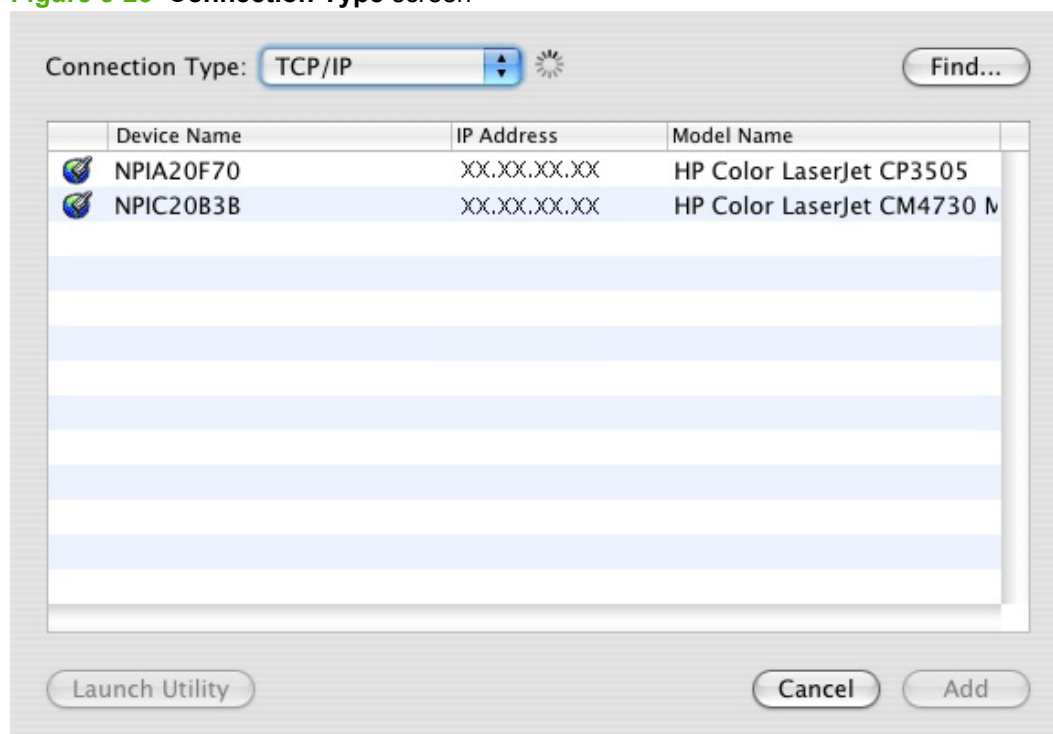
Figure 5-22 Printer Selector screen



To open the HP Printer Utility directly, select the product and click **Launch Utility**.

If the product does not appear, click **More Printers....** The **Connection Type** screen appears.

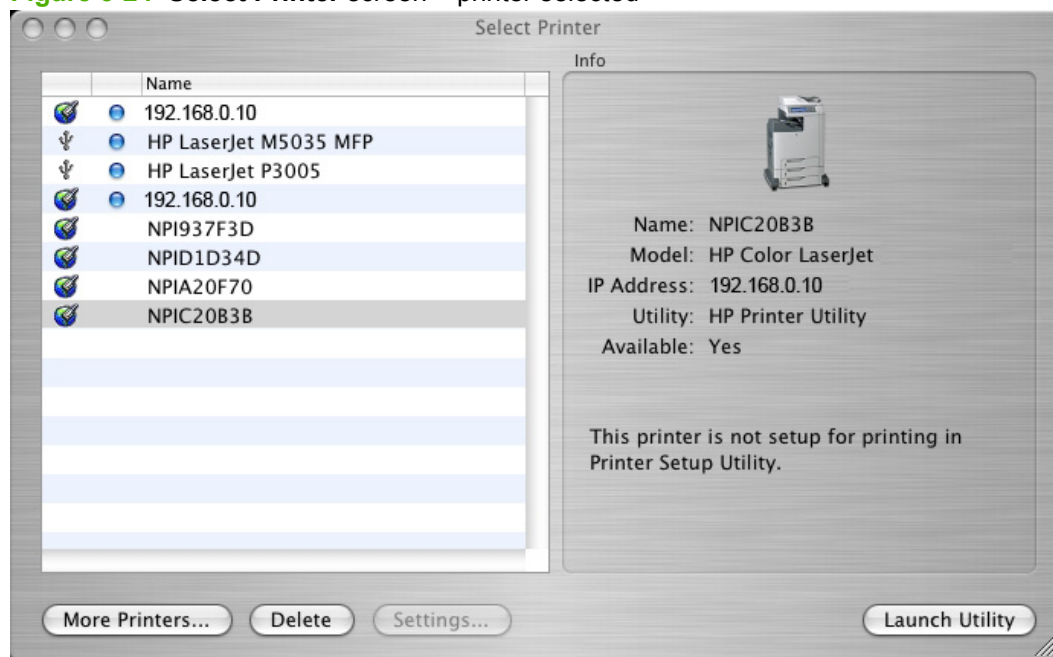
Figure 5-23 Connection Type screen



Choose the connection type (**USB** or **TCP/IP**). The product name appears under **Model Name**.

On the **Connection Type** screen, click **Add**. The **Select Printer** screen appears, showing product information.

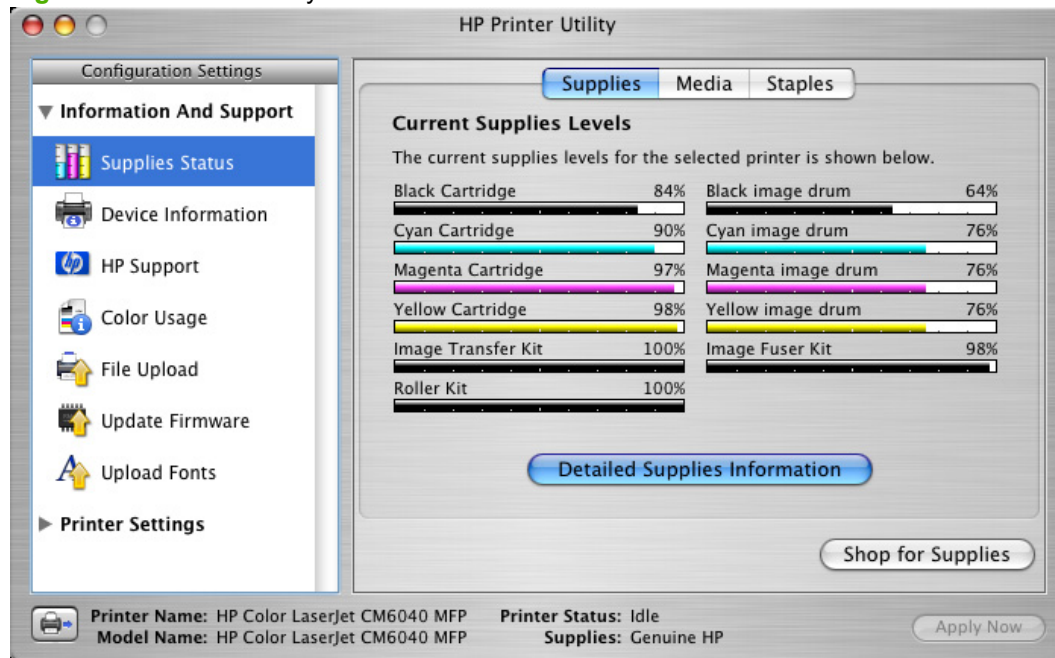
Figure 5-24 Select Printer screen – printer selected



On the **Select Printer** screen, click **Settings...** to open the **Device Status** screen in the HP EWS.

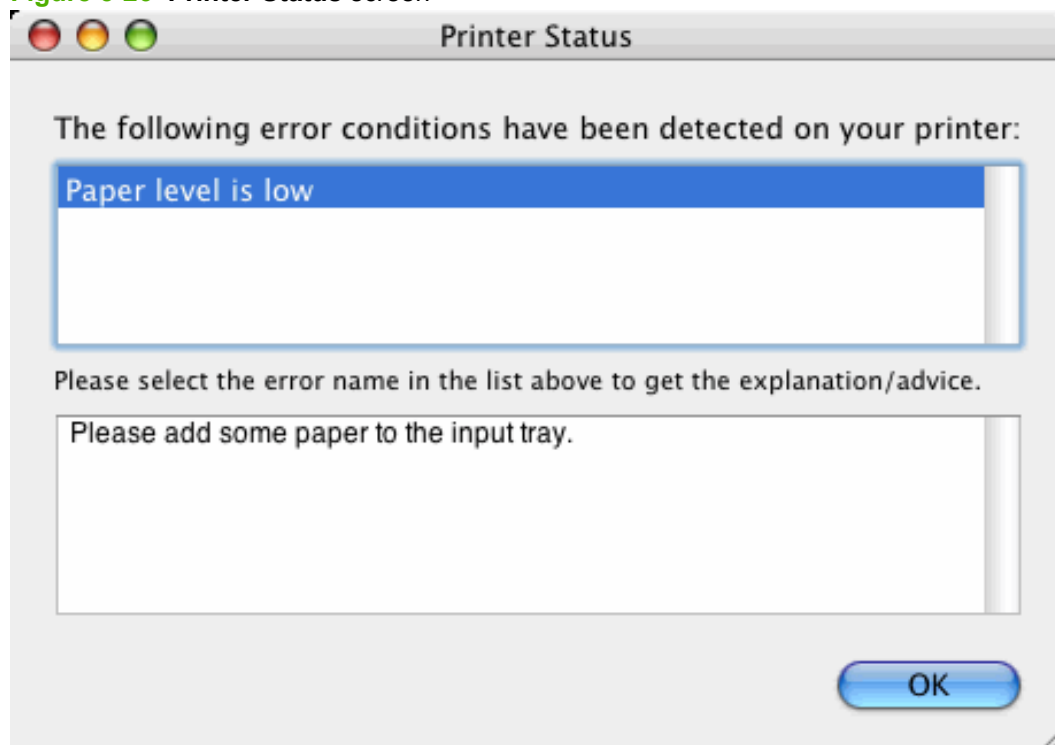
To open the HP Printer Utility, select the product and click **Launch Utility**.

Figure 5-25 Printer Utility screen



If the HP Printer Utility software detects a condition that might need attention, the **Printer Status** screen appears.

Figure 5-26 Printer Status screen



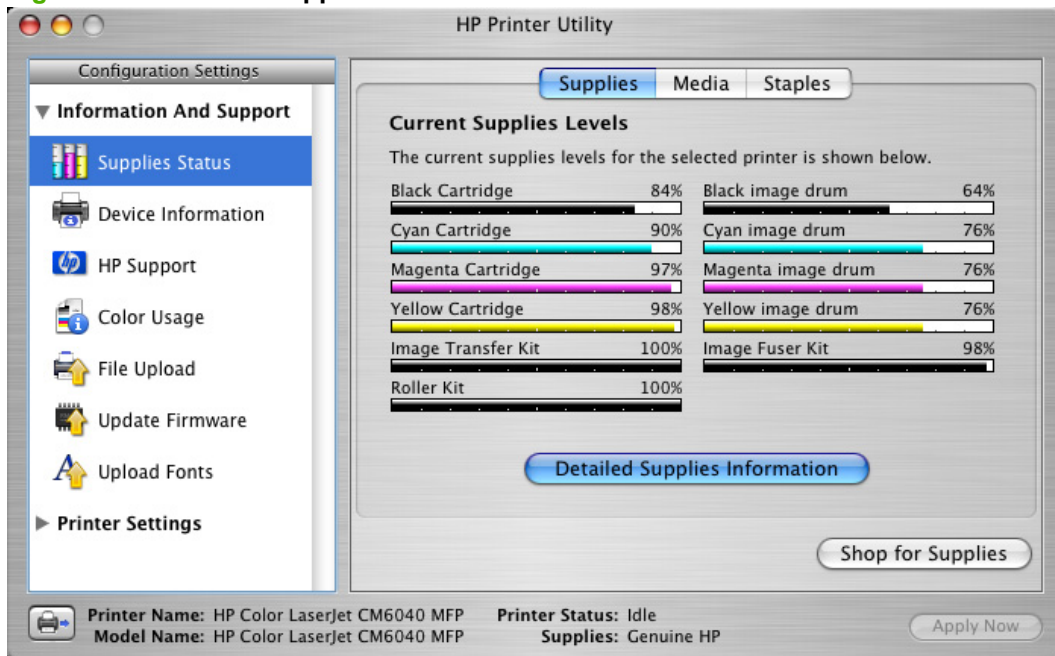
Address the condition and click **OK** to close the screen. The HP Printer Utility opens.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP Printer Utility.

Supplies Status

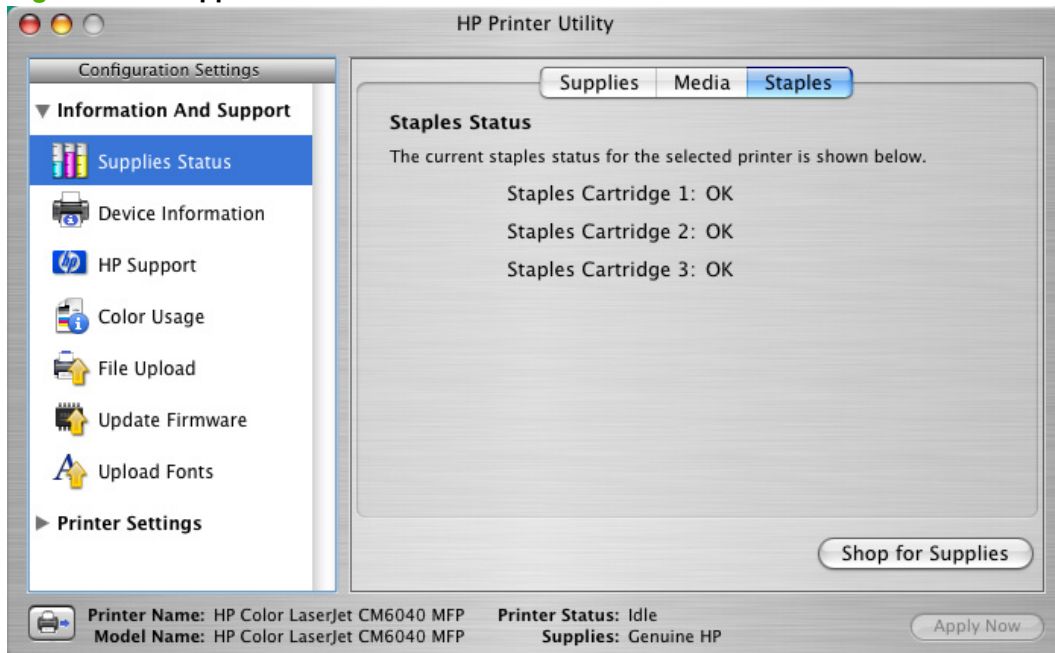
The HP Printer Utility opens to the **Current Supplies Levels** screen.

Figure 5-27 Current Supplies Levels screen



Click **Detailed Supplies Information...** to open the **Supplies Status** screen.

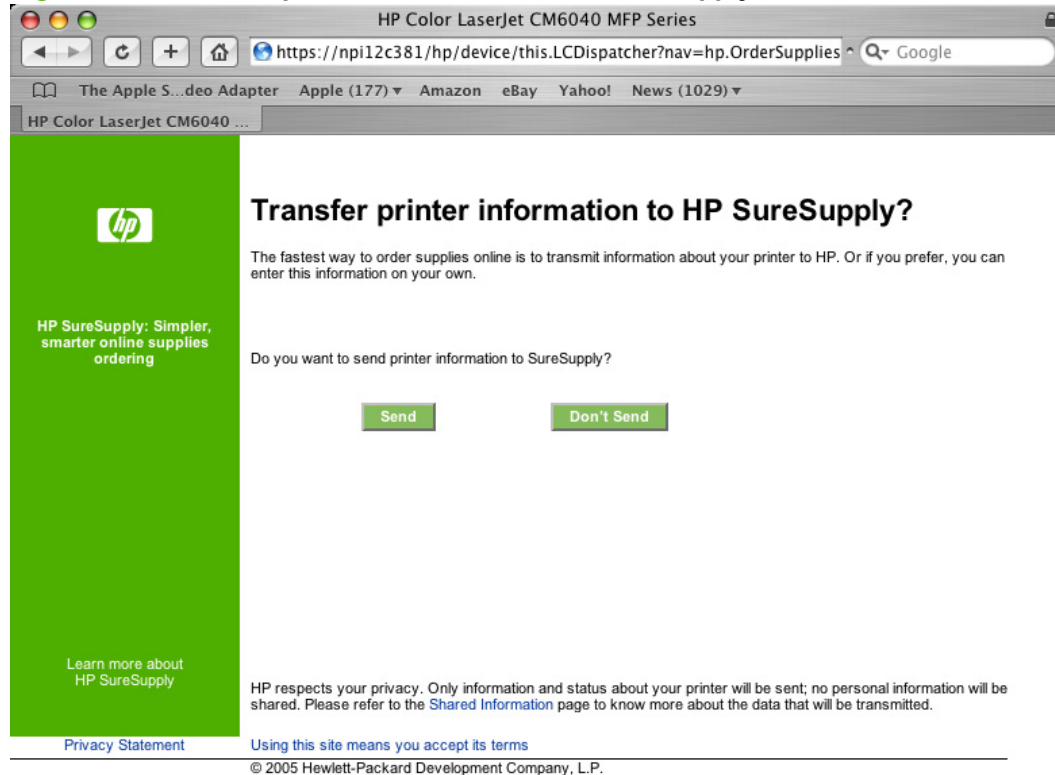
Figure 5-28 Supplies Status screen



Use the scroll button to see information about the print cartridges.

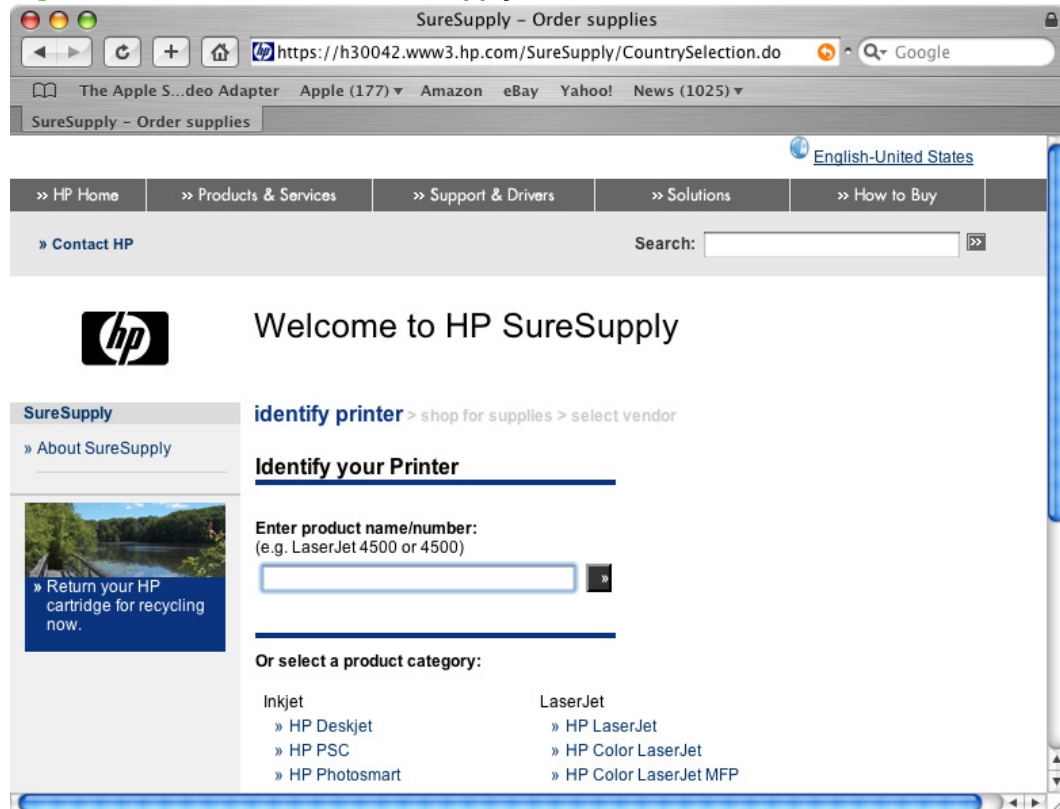
If you have Internet access and click **Shop for Supplies** (see [Figure 5-27 Current Supplies Levels screen on page 237](#)), a screen appears that explains the ordering process and describes the kind of information that can be sent about the product to facilitate the ordering of supplies.

Figure 5-29 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen



After either option is selected (**Send** or **Don't Send**), the Welcome to HP SureSupply Web page opens.

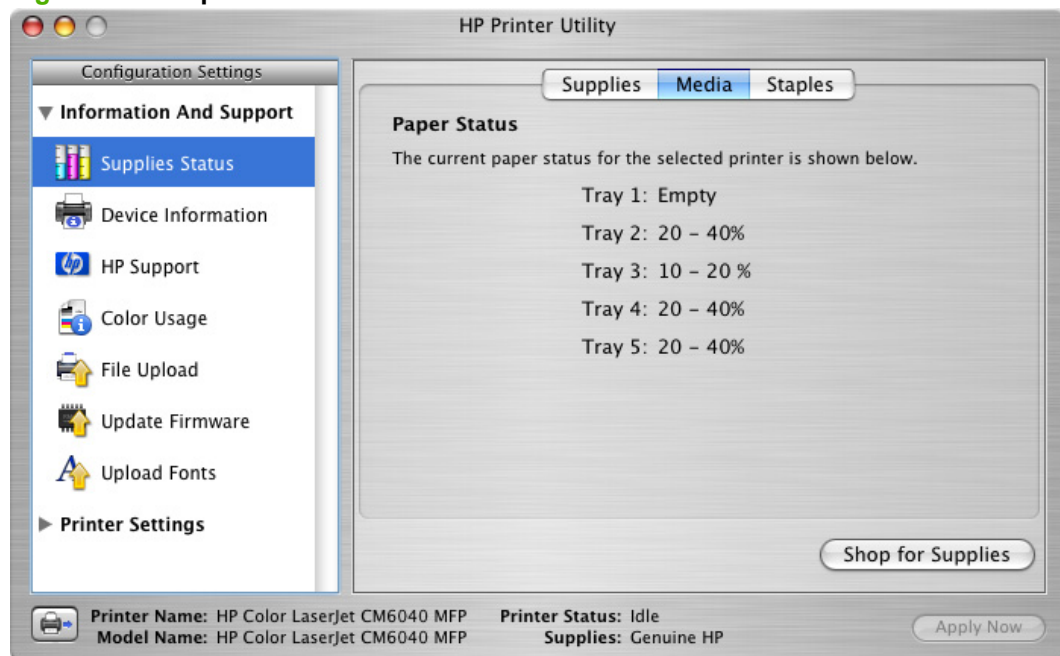
Figure 5-30 Welcome to HP SureSupply screen



You can continue ordering supplies without sending product information by clicking the **Don't Send** link.

On the **Supplies Status** screen, click **Media** to see the status of the trays.

Figure 5-31 Paper Status screen

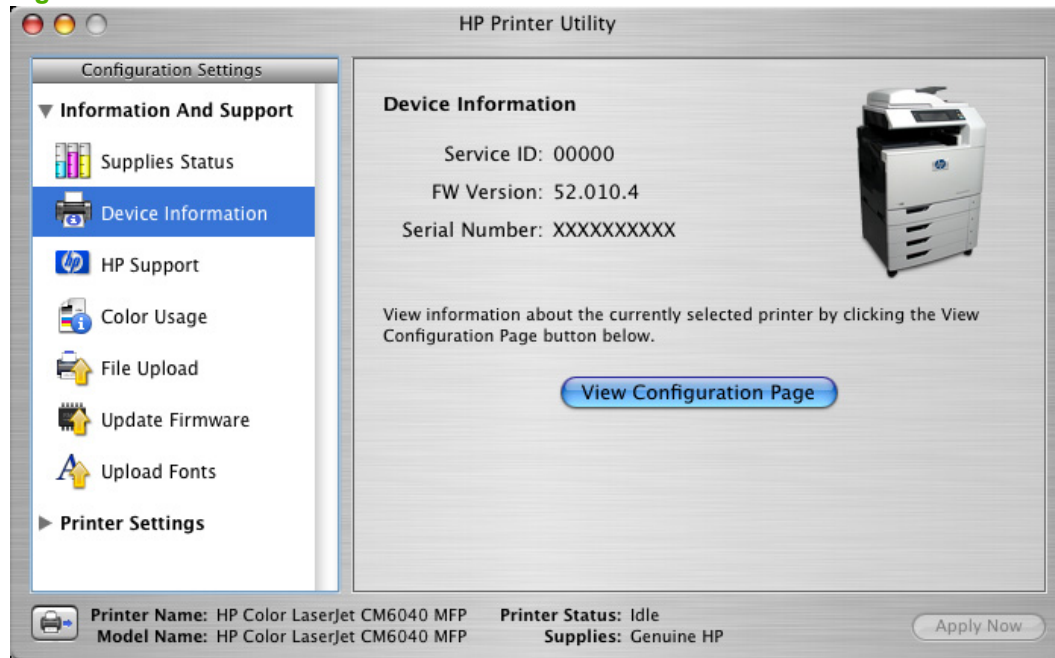


You can also order supplies from this screen by clicking **Shop for Supplies**.

Device Information

Click **Device Information** in the menu on the left to find the product service ID (if assigned), the firmware version, and the serial number.

Figure 5-32 Device Information screen



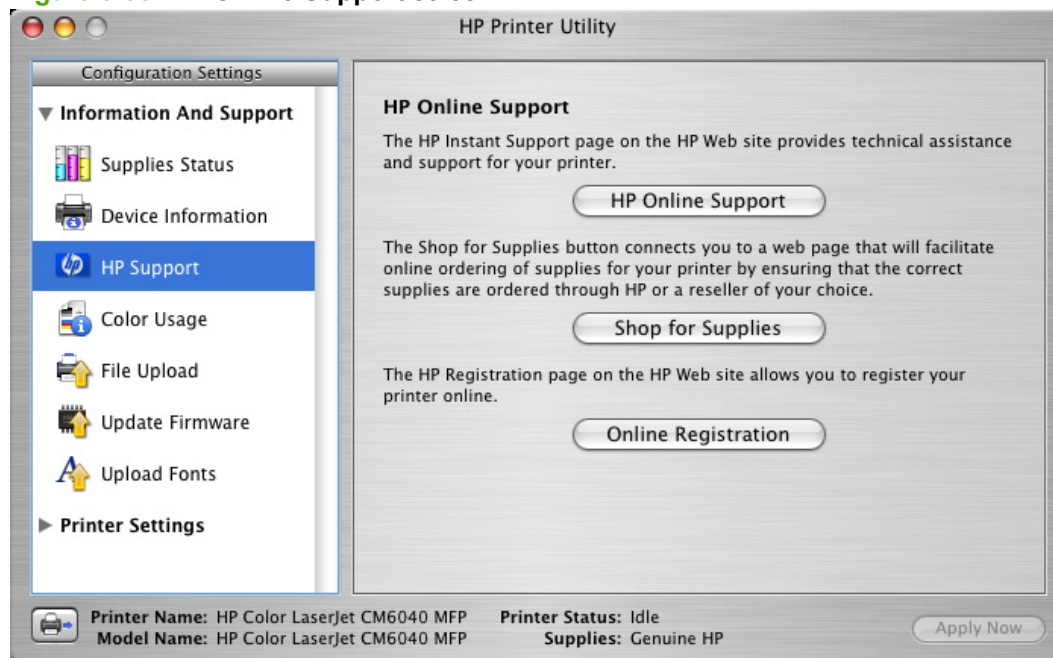
The configuration page shows other settings; click **View Configuration Page** to see it.

Click the product icon in the lower-left corner to see information about another installed products. This action relaunches the HP Printer Utility so that you can select another product.

HP Support

Click **HP Support** to open the **HP Online Support** screen.

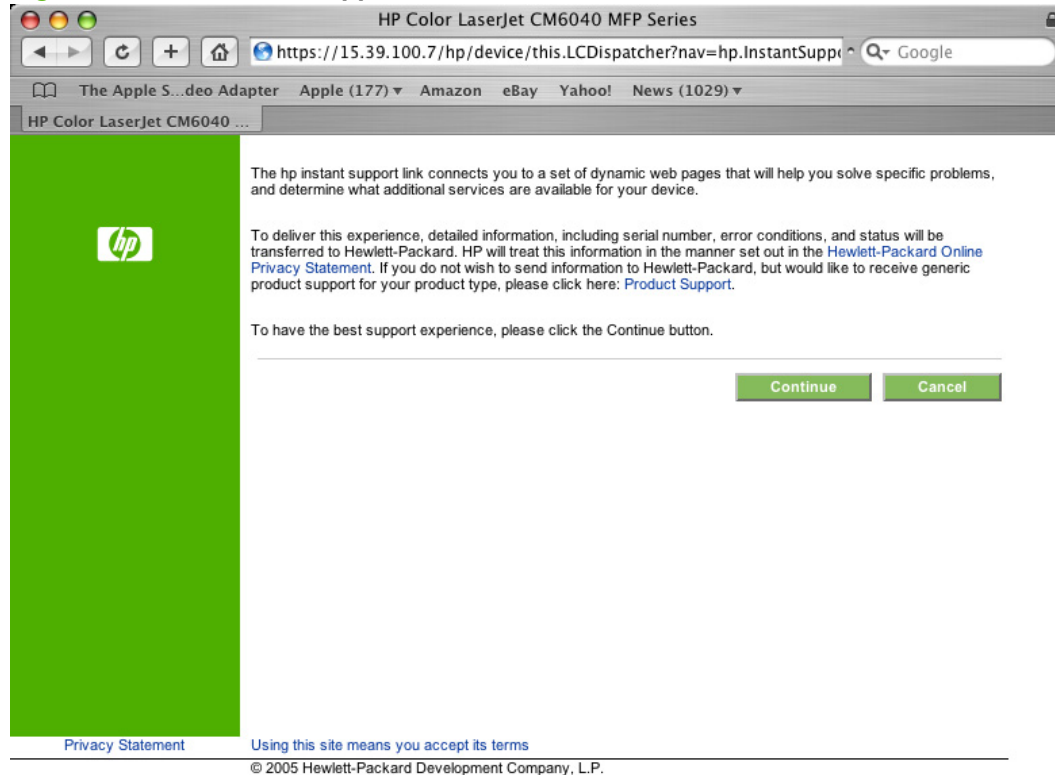
Figure 5-33 HP Online Support screen



If you have Internet access, you can connect to HP support pages from this screen.

Click the **Instant Support** link to open the HP Instant Support Web page.

Figure 5-34 HP Instant Support link



Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

Click the **Product Support** link if you do not want to send information to HP but would like to receive generic product support.

Click **Continue** to open a page where you can select the product and find further information about product support.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **HP Online Support** screen in the HP Printer Utility.

Click **Shop for Supplies** to open the Order Supplies Web page (see [Figure 5-29 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen on page 238](#)).

Click **Online Registration** to open the HP Registration Web page and register the product.

Figure 5-35 HP Registration Web page

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "HP Registration - Select Product". The address bar displays the URL "https://h20366.www2.hp.com/americas/flowPage/registration/index.do?". The browser's search bar contains the word "Google". Below the browser window, the HP logo is displayed next to the text "HP Registration" and "Thank you for choosing HP". A progress bar at the top indicates the current step: "1 Product information", with "2 About you" and "3 Registration confirmation" also visible. A link for "Frequently Asked Questions" is located to the right of the progress bar. The main content area features a blue box with the heading "Register with HP now, and receive the following:" and a list of benefits: "Access support and services, and get the most out of your HP products", "Manage your profile and register your products", and "Sign up for free driver notices and personalized newsletters". Below this, a note states "* = required fields". The registration form includes two dropdown menus: "Select your country/language: *" with "United States-English" selected, and "For what purpose will your new HP product primarily be used: *" with "Select One" selected. A section titled "Locate your product name and model number" contains a text input field labeled "Enter your product below:" and a "Search" button. A link "» How do I find my product name/number?" is provided below the search field. At the bottom, a link "» Create a profile or edit your existing profile" is shown. The footer contains links for "Privacy statement", "Using this site means you accept its terms", and "Feedback to webmaster", along with the copyright notice "© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P."

HP Registration - Select Product

https://h20366.www2.hp.com/americas/flowPage/registration/index.do? Google

United States-English

» HP Home

» Contact HP

Search:

hp HP Registration
Thank you for choosing HP

1 Product information 2 About you 3 Registration confirmation

» Frequently Asked Questions

Register with HP now, and receive the following:

- Access support and services, and get the most out of your HP products
- Manage your profile and register your products
- Sign up for free driver notices and personalized newsletters

* = required fields

Select your country/language: *

For what purpose will your new HP product primarily be used: *

Locate your product name and model number

Enter your product below:

» How do I find my product name/number?

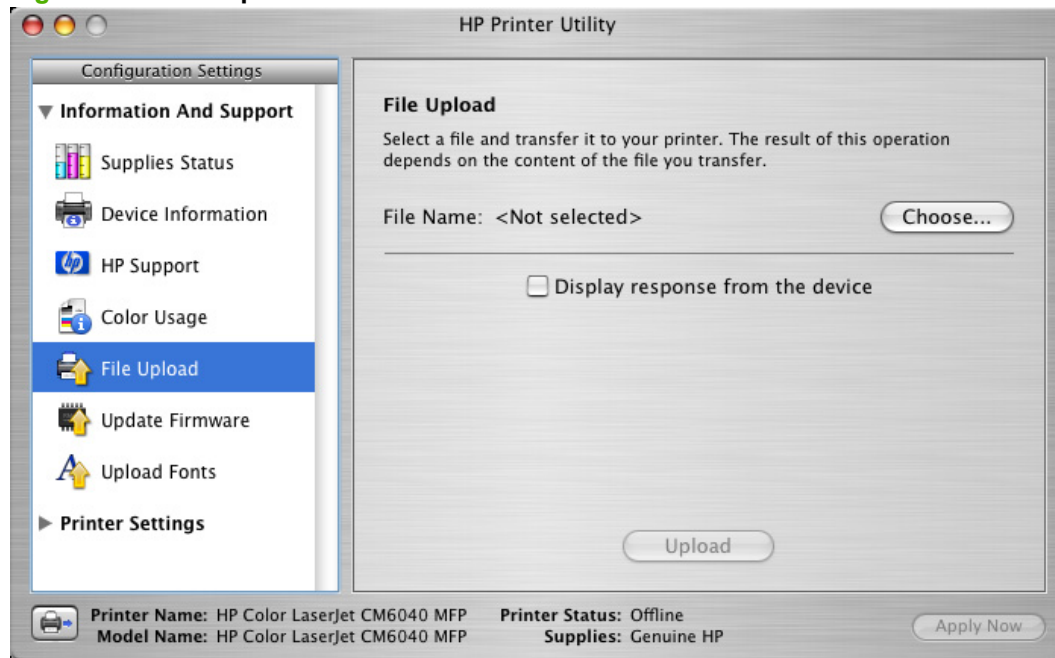
Don't have a product to register?
» Create a profile or edit your existing profile

[Privacy statement](#) [Using this site means you accept its terms](#) [Feedback to webmaster](#)
© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

File Upload

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **File Upload** to open the **File Upload** screen.

Figure 5-36 File Upload screen



The **File Upload** command is supported for file types that can be sent directly to the product without first being opened through a software program. Some files can be uploaded to the product, but some cannot.

Documents in the following file formats can be printed by using a command line. That is, they do not need to be opened in a software program that supports the file format (such as the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs for .PDF files), but can be sent directly to the product by using the **File Upload** command.

- HP LaserJet printer command language (PCL)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Choose...** to open a navigation screen. Locate the file you want to upload and click **Open**.

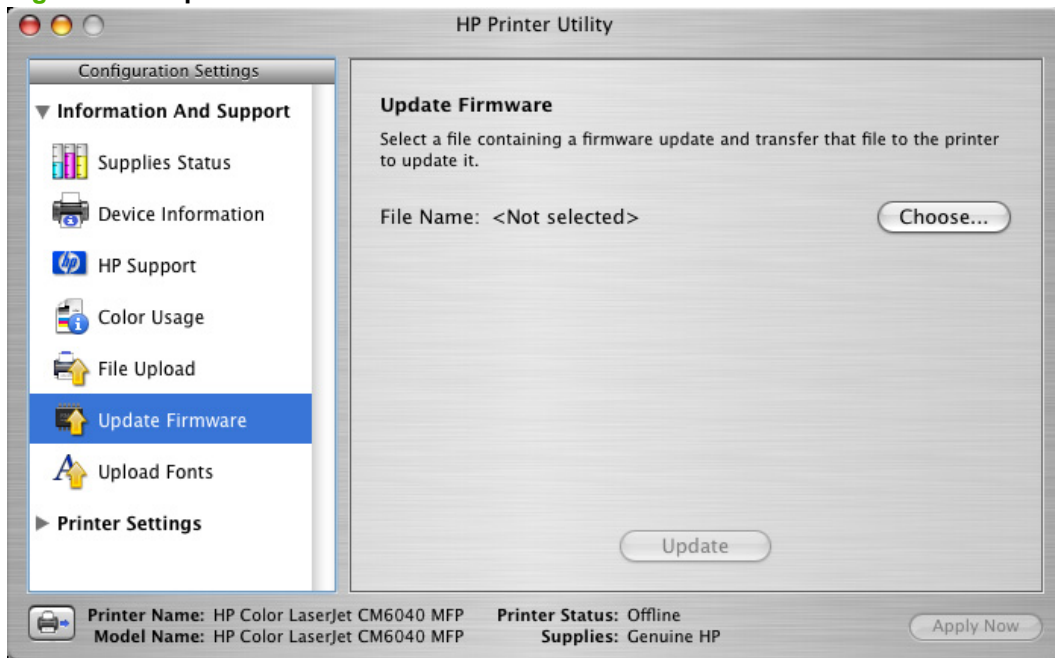
On the **File Upload** screen, click **Display response from the product** to see whether the upload was successful. If the file loads successfully, no message appears.

On the navigation screen, select the file and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen of the HP Printer Utility. Click **Upload**.

Update Firmware

Choose **Update Firmware** to locate a firmware upgrade file and install it on the product.

Figure 5-37 Update Firmware screen



Click **Choose** to open a navigation screen. Browse to the firmware file and click **Open**. The **Update Firmware** screen shows the file name. Click **Update**.

Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility

Make sure that you have the tools and files that are necessary for the update. You will need the HP Printer utility and the CM6030FW.RFU file or the CM6040FW.RFU file, which is the firmware file for the product. The HP Printer Utility is a software program that is available only for Mac OS X V10.2 or later.

The HP Printer Utility can be found on the Administrator software CD (“Admin CD”) that came with the product. If you do not have the CD, you can obtain the HP Printer Utility by downloading the latest product installer from the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp

The firmware file can be downloaded from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_firmware or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_firmware

After you have the firmware file and the HP Printer Utility, you are ready to begin the update process. Complete the following steps:

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. Select **Update Firmware**, click **Choose**, browse to firmware upgrade file, and then click **Open**.
3. On the **Update Firmware** screen, click **Update**.

 **NOTE:** You may receive an error message on the screen indicating that the product is offline. Verify that the product is turned on. If it is, ignore the message. The **Updating** screen appears and the update proceeds as expected.

The update process can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages that appear on the control panel are described in the “Messages during the firmware update section” of the Engineering Details chapter of this document.

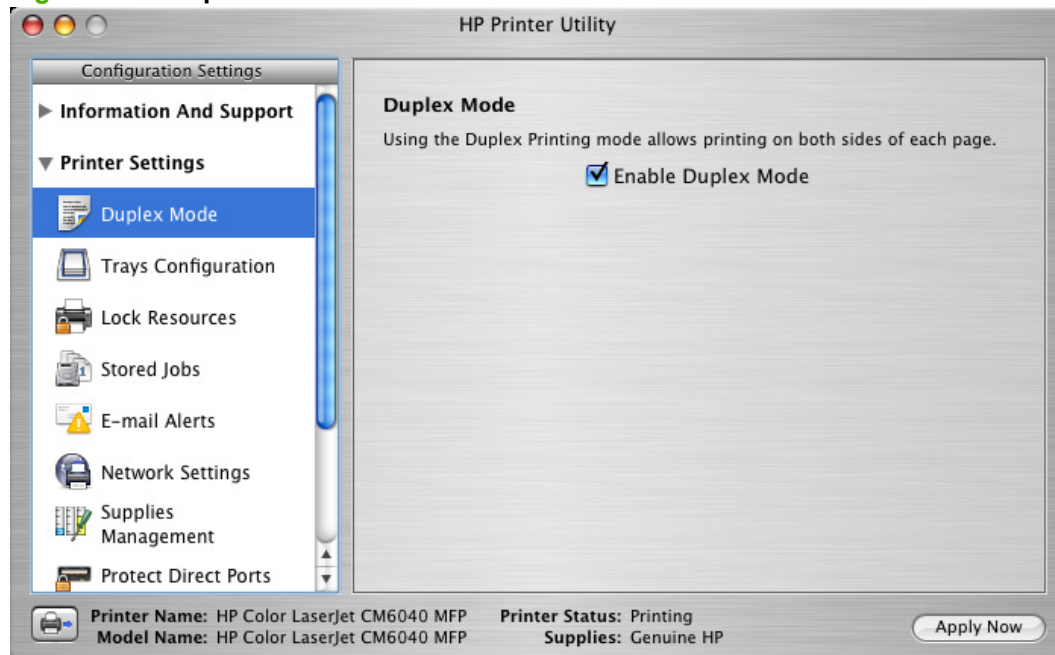
 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Duplex mode

In the duplex unit, the **Configuration Settings** menu includes a **Duplex Mode** setting. Click this setting to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.

Figure 5-38 Duplex Mode screen

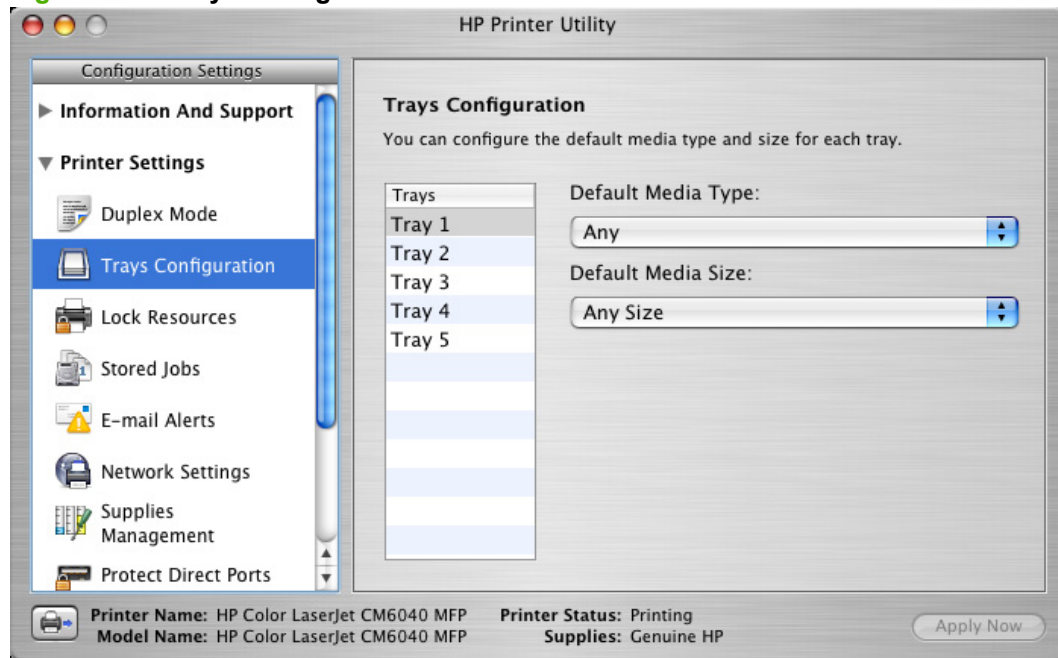


1. Choose **Duplex Mode** to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.
2. Select the **Enable Duplex Mode** check box.
3. Click **Apply Now** to enable printing on both sides of the page.

Trays Configuration

Under **Printer Settings**, choose **Trays Configuration** to open the **Trays Configuration** screen.

Figure 5-39 Trays Configuration screen

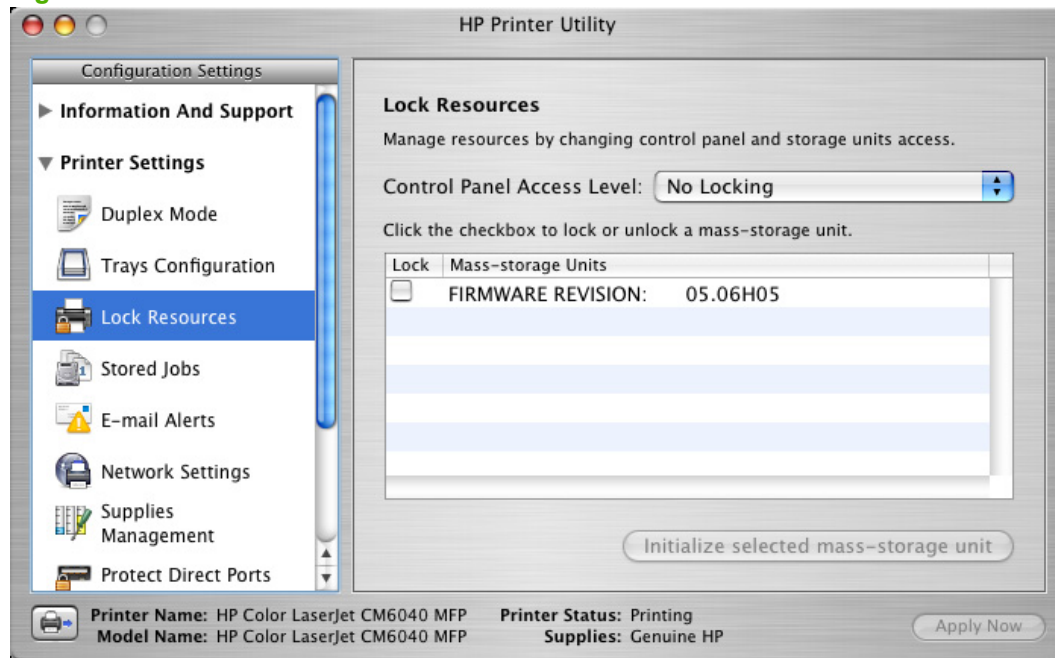


1. Choose **Trays Configuration** to change media size and type for each of the trays installed on the product.
2. To change the media size, select a tray and then choose a different media size in the **Default Media Size** drop-down menu.
3. To change the media type, select a tray and then choose a different media type in the **Default Media Type** drop-down menu.
4. Click **Apply Now** to save the settings.

Lock Resources

Select **Lock Resources** to lock certain features of the printer driver.

Figure 5-40 Lock Resources screen



In **Control Panel Access Level**, choose one of the following settings:

- **No Locking** provides full control of the printer driver.
- **Minimal Locking** provides control over paper-handling features.
- **Moderate Locking** blocks changes in the printer driver configuration.
- **Maximal Locking** prevents users from changing product control-panel settings.

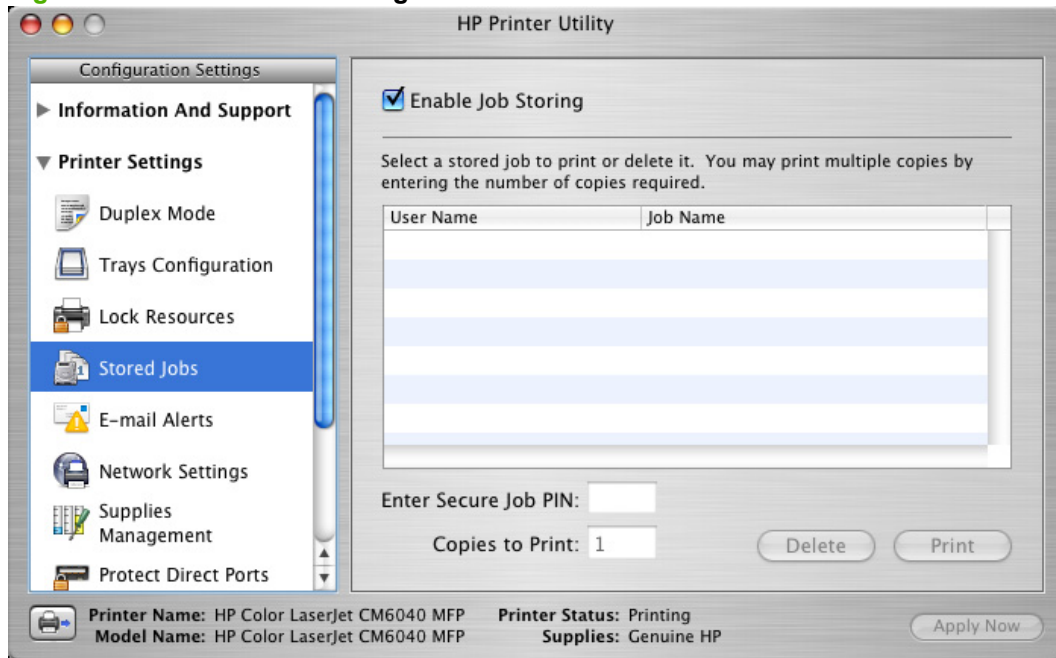
In the lower pane, select the **Lock** check box for the mass-storage unit that you want to lock.

⚠ WARNING! Click **Initialize selected mass-storage unit** *only* if you want to erase all data that is currently stored on the hard drive. *You cannot undo this action.*

Stored Jobs

Choose **Stored Jobs** to change the **Enable Job Storing** setting. This setting is selected by default. Click to clear the check box to disable the job-storing feature.

Figure 5-41 Enable Job Storing screen



You can type a PIN for your job in the **Enter Secure Job PIN** field.

Select the number of copies in the **Copies to Print** field.

Select a stored job and click **Print** to print the job.

Select a stored job and click **Delete** to delete the job.

Job-storage print jobs can also be released or deleted at the product control panel.

- [Releasing a job-storage print job](#)
- [Deleting a job-storage print job](#)

Releasing a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. In the **Retrieve** tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. The folder that contains the stored jobs opens.
3. Touch the appropriate job.
If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. To print job, touch **Print List**.

Deleting a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the product memory. Do this from the product control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch the appropriate document.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.

4. Touch **Delete**.
5. A message appears: **Do you want to delete this stored job?**

Touch **Yes**. The document is deleted.

Or, do the following:

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch appropriate document.
4. Touch **Delete**.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is deleted.

E-mail Alerts

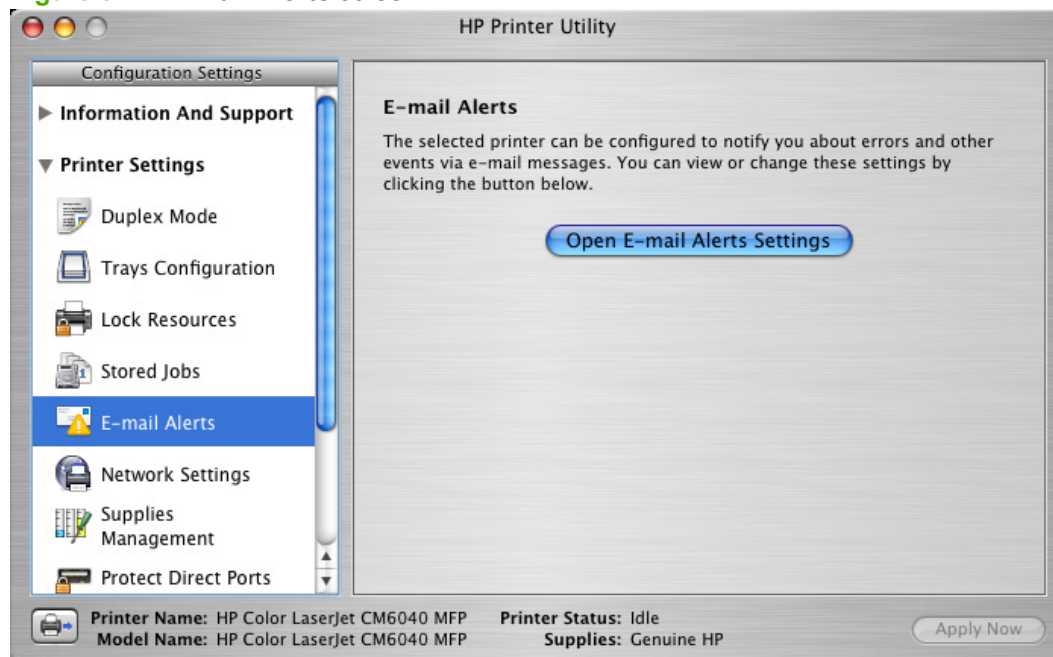


NOTE: The **E-mail Alerts** screen is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

Choose **E-mail Alerts** to configure the product to send e-mail notifications to users.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from the IT administrator. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Admin CD.

Figure 5-42 E-mail Alerts screen

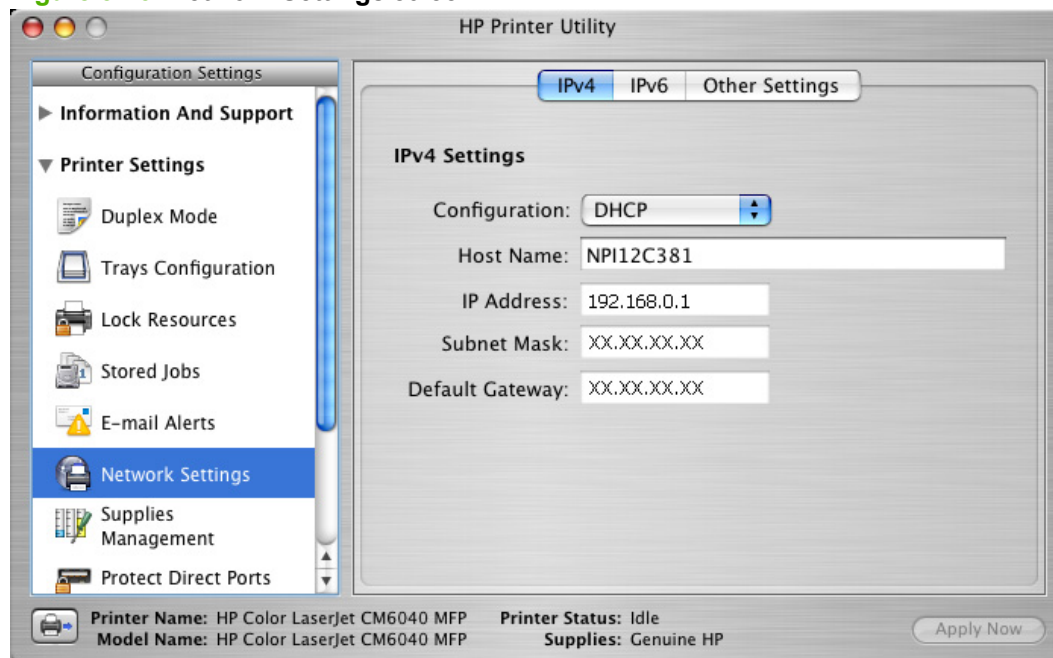


Click **Open E-mail Alerts Settings** to open the HP EWS. The HP EWS opens to the **Alerts** screen on the **Settings** tab, where you can set notifications to manage the product.

Network Settings

 **NOTE:** **Network Settings** is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

Figure 5-43 Network Settings screen



Choose one of the following options in the **Configuration** drop-down menu:

- **DHCP**
- **BootP**
- **Manual**

You can also use this screen to modify the following settings:

- **Host Name**
- **IP Address**
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Default Gateway**

To save new settings, click **Apply Now**.

To view and change other network settings, click **Additional Network Settings**. The HP EWS Networking screen opens.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from your IT administrator. For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Admin CD.

The HP EWS opens to the **Network Settings** screen. For information about this screen, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Admin CD.

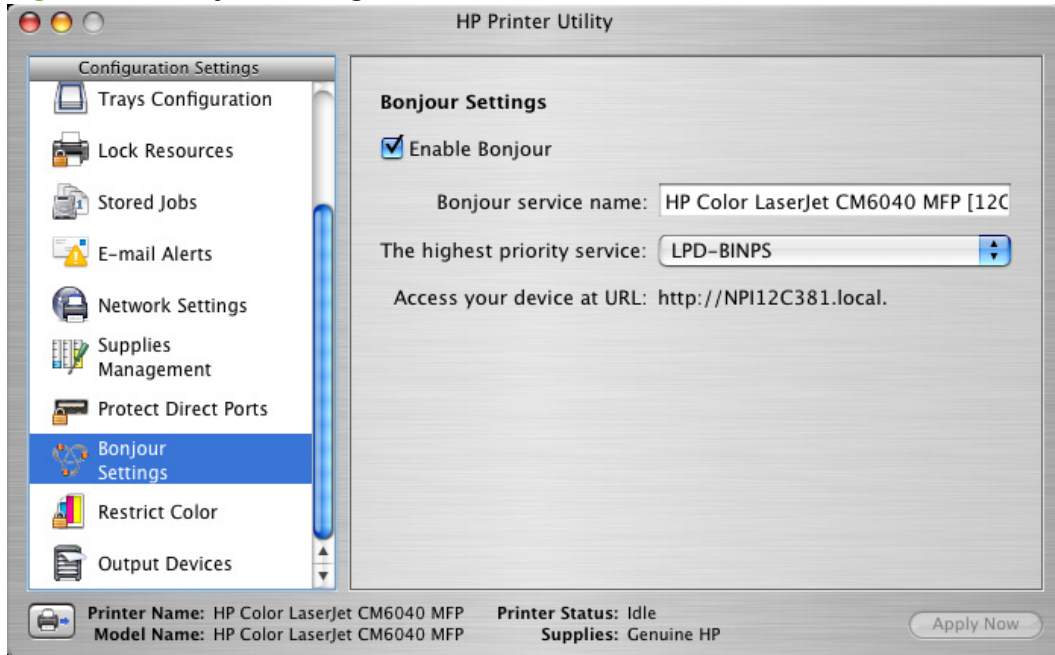
Bonjour Settings



NOTE: The **Bonjour Settings** screen is available if the product is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the product is installed over a USB connection.

Choose **Bonjour Settings** to open the **Bonjour Settings** screen. Bonjour is enabled by default.

Figure 5-44 Bonjour Settings screen



To disable Bonjour, click to clear the **Enable Bonjour** check box and then click **Apply Now**.

The following options are available in the **The highest priority service** drop-down menu:

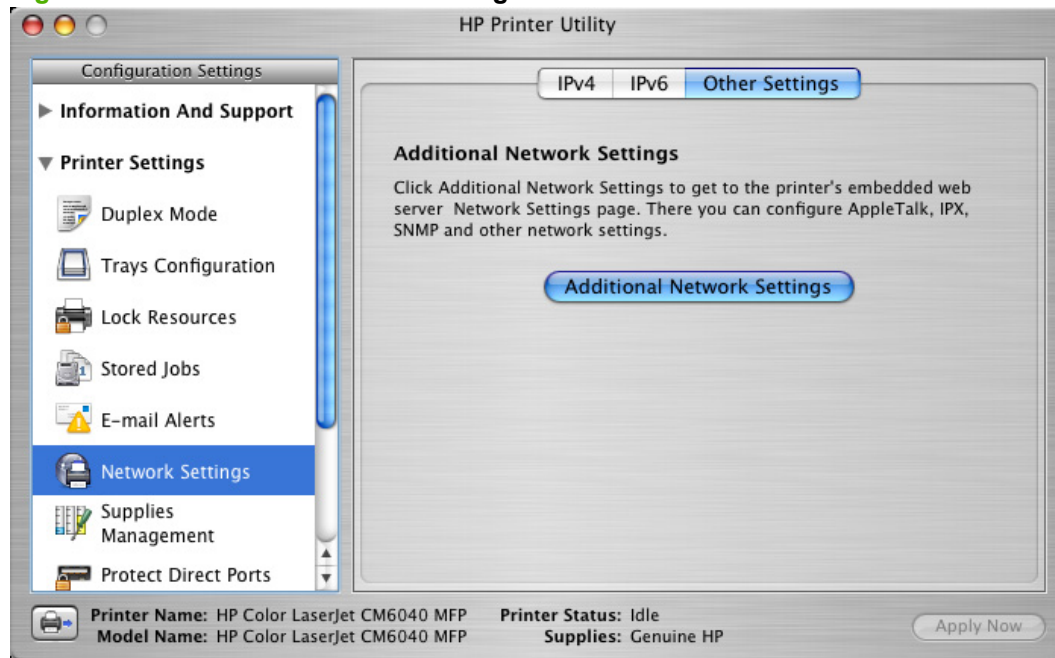
- **Port 9100**
- **IPP**
- **LPD-RAW**
- **LPD-TEXT**
- **LPD-AUTO**
- **LPD-BINPS (default)**

After you select a new setting, click **Apply Now** to save settings.

Additional Network Settings

Choose **Additional Network Settings** to gain access to the HP EWS.

Figure 5-45 Additional Network Settings screen



To open the HP EWS, click **Open Embedded Web Server**.

For information about HP EWS settings, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM6030 and CM6040 MFP Embedded Web Server User Guides*, which are available on the Admin CD.

Use features in the Macintosh printer driver

Create and use printing presets in Macintosh

Use printing presets to save the current printer driver settings for reuse.

Create a printing preset

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Select the print settings.
4. In the **Presets** box, click **Save As...**, and type a name for the preset.
5. Click **OK**.

Use printing presets

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. In the **Presets** box, select the printing preset that you want to use.



NOTE: To use printer-driver default settings, select **Standard**.

Resize documents or print on a custom paper size

You can scale a document to fit on a different size of paper.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Paper Handling** menu.
3. In the area for **Destination Paper Size**, select **Scale to fit paper size**, and then select the size from the drop-down list.
4. If you want to use only paper that is smaller than the document, select **Scale down only**.

Print a cover page

You can print a separate cover page for your document that includes a message (such as “Confidential”).

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Cover Page** menu, and then select whether to print the cover page **Before Document** or **After Document**.
4. In the **Cover Page Type** menu, select the message that you want to print on the cover page.



NOTE: To print a blank cover page, select **Standard** as the **Cover Page Type**.

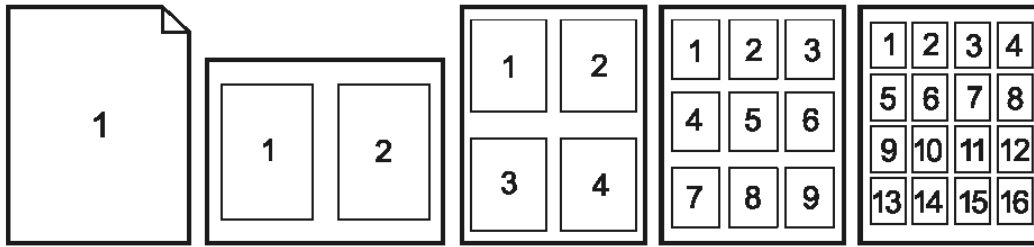
Use watermarks

A watermark is a notice, such as “Confidential,” that is printed in the background of each page of a document.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Watermarks** menu.
3. Next to **Mode**, select the type of watermark to use. Select **Watermark** to print a semi-transparent message. Select **Overlay** to print a message that is not transparent.
4. Next to **Pages**, select whether to print the watermark on all pages or on the first page only.
5. Next to **Text**, select one of the standard messages, or select **Custom** and type a new message in the box.
6. Select options for the remaining settings.

Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.



1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Layout** menu.
4. Next to **Pages per Sheet**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
5. Next to **Layout Direction**, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
6. Next to **Borders**, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.

Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)

Use automatic duplex printing

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.
2. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
3. Open the **Layout** menu.
4. Next to **Two-Sided**, select either **Long-Edge Binding** or **Short-Edge Binding**.
5. Click **Print**.

Print on both sides manually

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.

△ **CAUTION:** To avoid jams, do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond).

2. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.

3. On the **Finishing** menu, select **Manually Print on 2nd Side**.
4. Click **Print**. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears on the computer screen before replacing the output stack in tray 1 for printing the second half.
5. Go to the printer, and remove any blank paper that is in tray 1.
6. Insert the printed stack face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first in tray 1. You *must* print the second side from tray 1.
7. If prompted, press the appropriate control panel button to continue.

Set the stapling options

If a finishing device that has a stapler is installed, you can staple documents.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Finishing** menu.
3. In the **Stapling Options** drop-down list, select the stapling option that you want to use.

Store jobs

You can store jobs on the product so you can print them at any time. You can share stored jobs with other users, or you can make them private.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Job Storage** menu.
3. In the **Job Storage:** drop-down list, select the type of stored job.
4. For the **Stored Job**, **Private Job**, and **Private Stored Job** types of stored jobs, enter a name for the stored job in the box next to **Job Name:**.

Select which option to use if another stored job already has that name.

- **Use Job Name + (1 - 99)** appends a unique number to the end of the job name.
 - **Replace Existing File** overwrites the existing stored job with the new one.
5. If you selected **Stored Job** or **Private Job** in step 3, type a 4-digit number in the box next to **PIN To Print (0000 - 9999)**. When other people attempt to print this job, the product prompts them to enter this PIN number.

Set the color options

Use the **Color Options** pop-up menu to control how colors are interpreted and printed from software programs.

1. On the **File** menu in the software program, click **Print**.
2. Select the driver.
3. Open the **Color Options** pop-up menu.

4. Click **Show Advanced Options**.
5. Adjust the individual settings for text, graphics, and photographs.

Use the Services menu

If the product is connected to a network, use the **Services** menu to obtain product and supply-status information.

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**.
2. Open the **Services** menu.
3. To open the embedded Web server and perform a maintenance task, do the following:
 - a. Select **Device Maintenance**.
 - b. Select a task from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Launch**.
4. To go to various support Web sites for this device, do the following:
 - a. Select **Services on the Web**.
 - b. Select **Internet Services**, and select an option from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click **Go!**.

6 Engineering details

- [Remote firmware updates](#)
- [Print print-ready documents](#)
- [Media attributes](#)
- [HP Device Manager for Linux](#)

Remote firmware updates

The configuration page lists the firmware version of the product. On flash-based products, you can update the firmware code by downloading the latest flash executable file for the product and running the program according to the Readme instructions that come with it. If the firmware should become corrupted or fail, usually because of an interruption when attempting to update the firmware, the product may no longer function. If updated firmware becomes available, you can download the firmware update flash executable file for the product from one of the following Web sites:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_firmware or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_firmware

The product features remote firmware update (.RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and printer drivers.

The process for remotely upgrading firmware involves the following steps:

- 1. Print a configuration page to see what version of firmware is currently installed on the product. Also, print a menu map to see what user settings have been configured.
- 2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.

To find the most recent firmware upgrade for the product, go to one of the following URLs:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_firmware or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_firmware

- 3. Download the new firmware to the product.

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to the following URL mentioned in the previous step.

- 4. Print a new menu map to compare user settings between the previous firmware and the upgraded firmware.

Table 6-1 Version Checking [INTERNAL]

Primary/Location	Version Checking
JetDirect inside (JDI)	Does version checking. Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version. To update corrupt firmware with the same .RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.
Fax Modem	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the .RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the .RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version. Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same. The same version does not rewrite because of speed.

Table 6-1 Version Checking [INTERNAL] (continued)

	This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.
Formatter	No version checking. The formatter firmware updates if there is a formatter bundle on the .RFU and is not dependant on what version of firmware the formatter is currently using.
Copy control board (CPB)	No version checking.
Scan control board (SCB)	Does version checking. Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version. To update corrupt firmware with the same .RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.
Jetlink protocol (interface used to hook up output devices; external to product)	No version checking.
DC controller (internal to product)	Does version checking. The firmware updates if the .RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the .RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version.
• Duplexer • Input external trays • Output external bins	Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same. This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.

- [Print the configuration page](#)
- [HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility](#)
- [Other remote firmware update methods](#)

Print the configuration page

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page.

To print the configuration page from the product control panel:

1. From the Home screen, touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.

4. Touch **Configuration Page**.
5. Touch **Print**.



NOTE: If the product contains an HP Jetdirect print server or an optional hard disk drive, additional configuration pages print that provide information about those options.

The firmware datecode is listed on the configuration page in the section titled **Device Information**. The firmware datecode has this format: YYYYMMDD XX.XXX.X. The first string of numbers is the date, where YYYY represents the year, MM represents the month, and DD represents the day. For example, a firmware datecode that begins with 20061125 represents November 25, 2006. The second string of numbers represents the firmware version.

Print the menu map

Print the menu map before updating the firmware to see what user settings have been configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with the menu map printed after the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print the menu map from the product control panel:

1. From the Home screen, touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Administration Menu Map**.
5. Touch **Print**.

HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility

Use the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility to download a new firmware file to the product.

When this type of firmware update is downloaded from the HP Web site, the file contains two .EXE files, the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility executable (which contains the firmware upgrade integrated into the utility) and the Readme file that is applicable for the product and firmware revision that you are downloading.

The HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility uses the current print queue to communicate with the product and does not require the Windows spooler. This utility is only available for Windows operating systems.

Follow these instructions to complete the firmware update:

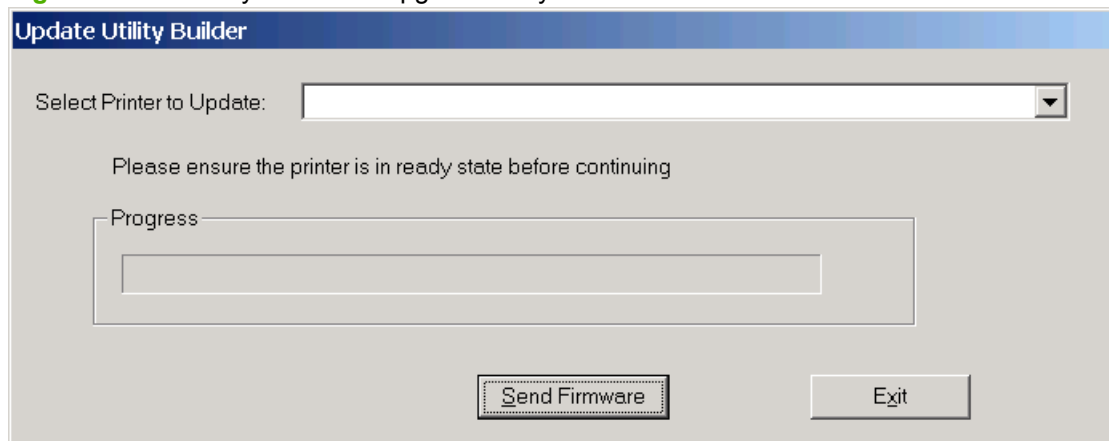


NOTE: In some circumstances, the firmware update might require ten minutes or more to complete. Do not power cycle the product or the computer during the update process or the product may become unusable.

1. Download the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility from the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/cljcm6030mfp_firmware or www.hp.com/go/cljcm6040mfp_firmware
2. Double-click and extract the downloaded file to the desktop.
3. Print a configuration page from the product control panel (if you have not done so already). Under the Device Information heading, note the Firmware Datecode. This version should change after you have successfully completed the firmware update. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).

4. Verify that the product is in a **Ready** state.
5. On the computer, double-click the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility executable file.

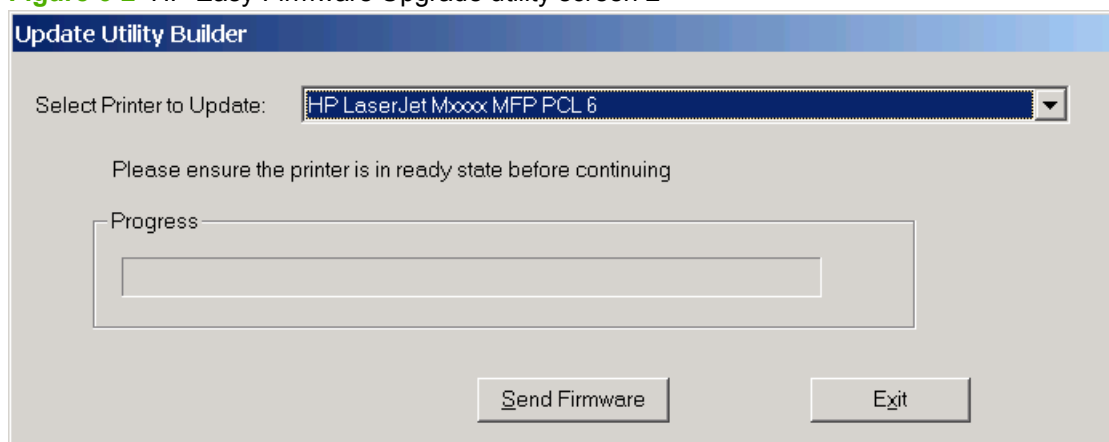
Figure 6-1 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1



6. Select the product that you want to update from the **Select Printer to Update:** drop-down list.

 **NOTE:** If the product that you want to upgrade is not in the list, you must install a printer driver for the product and be able to print to the product before continuing.

Figure 6-2 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2



7. Click **Send Firmware** to begin the firmware update process.

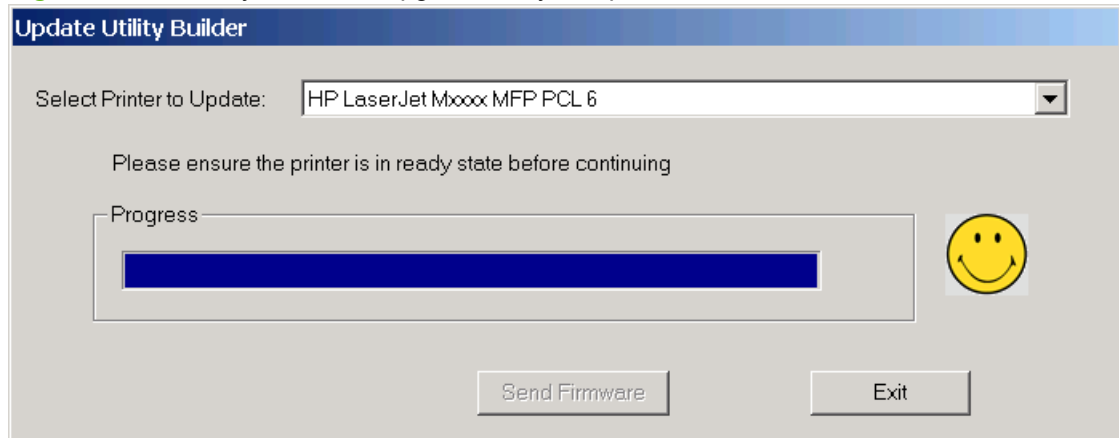
△ **CAUTION:** Interrupting the firmware upgrade process by turning the product off and then turning it on again, or by attempting to send a print job to the product, might cause the product to go into an unrecoverable state.

 **NOTE:** The progress bar does not necessarily reflect the actual time needed for the firmware upgrade to complete.

8. The update process is complete when an icon appears in the lower-right corner of the dialog box. Also, check that the product is in a ready state before continuing. A smiling icon appears when the update completes successfully; a frowning icon appears when the update does not complete successfully.

 **NOTE:** If the frowning icon appears, check to make sure the product is on and in a **Ready** state. Verify that you can send print jobs to the product, and then try again to perform the firmware update.

Figure 6-3 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen



9. Click **Exit** to close the dialog box.
10. Turn the product off and then turn it on again, if you are instructed to do so on the control panel.
11. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed.

Other remote firmware update methods

- [Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection](#)
- [Remote firmware update through a Windows network](#)
- [Remote firmware update for UNIX systems](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the LPR command](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [Messages during the firmware update](#)

Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a browser on Windows operating systems:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of the product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP://192.168.0.90`.
4. Press **Enter**.
5. Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the product.
6. Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT** icon or onto any open space in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in the Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view:

- a. Select **Tools**, select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
- b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
- c. Click **OK** to save the setting.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 269](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

7. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a network connection

Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a network connection on Windows operating systems:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
-  **NOTE:** Before connecting to the product, make sure that the product is in a **Ready** state. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control panel display.
2. Open a command prompt or an MS-DOS command prompt on the computer.
 3. Type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of the product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`.

4. Press **Enter**.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\CLJ\xxxxfw.RFU`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\CLJ\xxxxfw.rfu"`.

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

226 Transfer complete

After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 269](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

10. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed.
11. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
12. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.
13. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, update the firmware by completing these instructions:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file, including the path, <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\xxxxfw.rfu \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME
```



NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\xxxxfw.rfu" \\COMPUTERNAME\SHARENAME`

3. Press **Enter**.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 269](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that downloads the .TAR file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel`, where </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> is the location of the .TAR file.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 269](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

3. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command:

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>` -OR- `lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>`, where <IPADDRESS> can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the product, and where <FILENAME> is the filename of the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

3. Press **Enter**.

The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in [Messages during the firmware update on page 269](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.
5. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin Version 7.0 or later on the computer.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the **Navigation** panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
3. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the product in the list, and then click to select it.

 **NOTE:** If you need to upgrade the firmware for multiple products, select all of them by pressing the **Ctrl** key as you click the name of each product.

4. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the action list.
5. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
6. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from the hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server. After the upload is complete, the browser window refreshes.
7. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.

8. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the product. The control panel shows messages that indicate the progress of the upgrade. At the end of the upgrade process, the control panel shows the **Ready** message.
9. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
10. Create a device group. To accomplish this, follow these steps:
 - a. Click the **Device Management** folder, and then click the **All Devices** option.
 - b. Shift-click to select devices that are to be included in the group, and then click the **OK** button.
 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new device group, and then click the **OK** button.
11. To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click the **Open** button.
12. The **Device Group Tools** drop-down menu appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
13. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click the **Return to Device Group** option when finished.
14. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

Remote firmware update by using the HP Embedded Web Server

△ **CAUTION:** Use extreme caution when using this method. Only use this method as a last resort.

CAUTION: When trying to install or update firmware, do *not* use any buttons, browse to another site, close or touch the browser page in any way until the product has reset and displays **Ready**.

1. Print a menu map from the product control panel. To print a menu map, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).
3. In the **Information** tab, click the **Print** menu item.
4. Click **Browse** and navigate to the .RFU file.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. After the product automatically reboots, you might need to reboot manually. Turn the product off, then on.
7. When the product is in a **Ready** state, print a configuration page and verify that the firmware version has changed. Also, print the **Menu** map and check for settings changes.

 **NOTE:** Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware. To print a menu map from the product control panel, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).

Messages during the firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 6-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the network cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the RECEIVING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the PERFORMING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a USB port.
A power cycle occurred during the INITIALIZING process.	The update has been completed.

Print jobs that are sent to the product while a firmware update is in process do not interrupt the update.

All HP LaserJet products leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails for the component, the .RFU file must be resent. The only component exception is the formatter. See the following table for information regarding a formatter update error.



NOTE: Because a firmware update cannot be resent over a USB connection for Mac, contact an HP Customer Care Center if a remote update fails in a Macintosh operating system.

The first three messages in the following table appear during a normal firmware update process; others appear only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 6-3 Update messages

Product message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	This message appears from the time the product recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the product has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update. NOTE: If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while RECEIVING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the product control panel to indicate that the firmware update was interrupted.
PERFORMING UPGRADE	This message appears while the product is reprogramming the firmware. NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while PERFORMING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message RESEND UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display.
INITIALIZING	This message appears from the time the product has finished reprogramming the flash until the product reinitializes.
RESEND UPGRADE	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the .RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit becomes corrupted). Perform another firmware update by any means that is supported by the product, regardless of the connection (network or USB).
.RFU LOAD ERROR	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update of the formatter fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted.
SEND .RFU UPGRADE	If this message appears, the update must now be sent by a computer that is attached to the USB port of the product.
ON USB PORT	

 **NOTE:** To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.

Table 6-4 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The product recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the .RFU file again and send the new file to the product.
The wrong product firmware is contained in the .RFU file.	The product recognizes the product mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct .RFU file and send it to the product.
The upgrade was interrupted.	For an error message of RESEND UPGRADE , resend the upgrade by USB or Network connection. For an error message of RFU LOAD ERROR, SEND RFU UPGRADE ON USB PORT , resend the upgrade by a computer attached to the USB port.
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the product might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the product for a local telephone support list). Or go to one of the following URLs: www.hp.com/support/cljcm6030mfp or www.hp.com/support/cljcm6040mfp

Print print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or by a distribution method such as Internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the product without first opening the original software program:

- HP LaserJet Printer Control Language (.PCL)
- Portable Document Format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)
- Print file (.PRN)

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to the product.

 **NOTE:** The examples in this section are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be printed.

Print a print-ready file by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser:

 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Open a browser window.
2. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of the product is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
FTP:// 192.168.0.90
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded JetDirect page of the configuration page report.

3. Locate the print-ready file for the product.
4. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT** icon in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

- a. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
- b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
- c. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print a print-ready file by using FTP on a network connection

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready document by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a network connection on Windows operating systems:

1. Open a command prompt or an MS-DOS command prompt on the computer.
2. Type `ftp <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp 192.168.0.90
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded JetDirect page of the configuration page report.

3. Press **Enter**.
4. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
5. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
6. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
7. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
8. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

```
put C:\LJ\GUIDE.pdf
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\GUIDE.pdf"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

9. Press **Enter**.
10. The print-ready file prints.
11. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
12. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Print-ready file printing in a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), `<COMPUTERNAME>` is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and `<SHARENAME>` is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\GUIDE.pdf \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>
```

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded JetDirect page of the configuration page report.

NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\GUIDE.pdf" \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`

2. Press **Enter**. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Print a print-ready file in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME/ dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the print-ready file.

Print a print-ready file by using the LPR command

 **NOTE:** This direct printing method is for use in Windows.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type the following:

```
lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps  
<FILENAME>
```

where `IPADDRESS` can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the product, and where `FILENAME` is the file name of the print-ready file.

 **NOTE:** The above TCP/IP address is the TCP/IP address from the embedded JetDirect page of the configuration page report.

NOTE: The parameter `(-o l)` consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
3. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Print a print-ready file through the HP Embedded Web Server

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).
2. In the **Information** tab, click the **Print** menu item.
3. Click **Browse** and navigate to the file that you want to print.
4. Click **Apply**.

Media attributes

- [Media sources and destinations](#)
- [Media-source commands](#)
- [Printer driver supported media sizes](#)
- [Printer driver supported media types](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)
- [Media-type commands](#)
- [Paper and print media](#)

Media sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional media sources and destinations for the product.

Table 6-5 Media sources and destinations

Media sources	100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (Tray 2)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (Tray 3)	standard
	500-sheet paper trays (Tray 4 and Tray 5)	standard on the HP Color LaserJet CM6030f MFP
Media destinations	standard left bin	standard (not available when accessory output is attached)
	stapler/stacker, with 500-sheet output	optional
	3-bin mailbox	optional

Media-source commands

The media source commands can be used when control of media sources (i.e., paper trays) is desired when printing to the MFP via an application or operating system in which the HP-supplied Windows or Mac driver is not used.

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, `"ubyte 4 MediaSource"` is the command for Tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for media source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for Tray 2.

Table 6-6 Media-source commands

Media source	PCL 6	PCL 5	PostScript
	<code>ubyte # MediaSource</code> <code>OR ubyte_array</code> <code>"string"</code> <code>MediaSource¹</code>	<code>Esc&l#H</code>	<code>/MediaPosition # /</code> <code>ManualFeed true </code> <code>false or null</code>
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true
Tray 1 (100-sheet)	3	4	3 false
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	4	1	0 false
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	5	5	1 false
Tray 4 (500-sheet)	7	8	4 false
Tray 5 (500-sheet)	"TRAY5"	9	38 false
Printer Auto Select (HP unidrivers)	1	7	null false

¹ For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2"`
MediaSource is the PCL 6 command for Tray 2.

Printer driver supported media sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various media listed under the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the device and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 6-7 Supported media sizes and attributes

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)	LETTER
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	356 mm (14.0 inches)	LEGAL
Executive	184 mm (7.25 inches)	267 mm (10.5 inches)	EXEC
Statement	216 mm (8.5 inches)	140 mm (5.5 inches)	STATEMENT
8K	270 mm (10.75 inches)	390 mm (15.5 inches)	ROC8K
16K	195 mm (7.75 inches)	270 mm (10.75 inches)	ROC16K
4x6	102 mm (4.0 inches)	152 mm (6.0 inches)	
5x8	127 mm	203 mm	

Table 6-7 Supported media sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
	(5.0 inches)	(8.0 inches)	
8.5x13	216 mm	330 mm	8.5 x 13
	(8.5 inches)	(13 inches)	
11x17	279 mm	432 mm	LEDGER
	(11 inches)	(17 inches)	
12x18	305 mm	457 mm	12 x 18
	(12.0 inches)	(18.0 inches)	
A3	297 mm	420 mm	A3
	(11.7 inches)	(16.5 inches)	
A4	210 mm	297 mm	A4
	(8.27 inches)	(11.69 inches)	
A5	148 mm	210 mm	A5
	(5.83 inches)	(8.27 inches)	
A6	105 mm	148 mm	A6
	(4.13 inches)	(5.83 inches)	
RA3	305 mm	430 mm	RA3
	(12.01 inches)	(16.92 inches)	
SRA3	320 mm	450 mm	
	(12.60 inches)	(17.72 inches)	
B4 (JIS)	257 mm	364 mm	JIS B4
	(10.12 inches)	(14.33 inches)	
B5 (JIS)	182 mm	257 mm	JIS B5
	(7.17 inches)	(10.12 inches)	
B6 (JIS)	128 mm	182 mm	B6
	(5.04 inches)	(7.17 inches)	
Double Postcard Japan	148 mm	200 mm	Double Postcard (JIS)
	(5.83 inches)	(7.87 inches)	
Envelope #9	98 mm	225 mm	
	(3.88 inches)	(8.88 inches)	
Envelope #10	105 mm	241 mm	COM10
	(4.13 inches)	(9.5 inches)	
Envelope Monarch	98 mm	191 mm	MONARCH
	(3.88 inches)	(7.5 inches)	
Envelope B5	176 mm	250 mm	B5 ENV

Table 6-7 Supported media sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
	(6.93 inches)	(9.84 inches)	
Envelope C5	162 mm	229 mm	C5
	(6.38 inches)	(9.02 inches)	
Envelope C6	114 mm	162 mm	C6
	(4.49 inches)	(6.38 inches)	
Envelope DL	110 mm	220 mm	DL
	(4.33 inches)	(8.66 inches)	
Custom	Minimum:	Minimum:	³
	76.3 mm	127 mm	
	(3 inches)	(5 inches)	
	Maximum:	Maximum:	
	296.9 mm	431.8 mm	
	(11.69 inches)	(17 inches)	

¹ For all paper sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100 dots, at 600 dots per inch.

² The PCL 6 command for paper size is `ubyte_array "String" MediaSize`. The values in this column are the values for "String."

³ For custom sizes, the PCL 6 printer driver specifies actual dimensions, for example, for 8 by 9 inch custom size, "real32_xy 8.0 9.0 CustomMediaSize ubyte eInch CustomMediaSizeUnits."



NOTE: For scaling purposes, C-sized sheets and A2 sized paper are supported in the printer-driver; however, they are not supported on the printer.

Printer driver supported media types

The following table shows the media types that the printer driver supports.

Table 6-8 Supported input media types

Media types (command string)	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3 through 5	Duplex	Manual duplex
Unspecified	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Plain	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Light (60 - 74 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Intermediate (85 - 95 g/ m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Bond	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Mid-weight glossy (96 - 110 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Mid-weight (96 - 110 g/ m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Table 6-8 Supported input media types (continued)

Media types (command string)	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3 through 5	Duplex	Manual duplex
Heavy (111 - 130 g/m) 2	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy glossy (111 - 130 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Extra heavy (131 - 175 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Extra heavy glossy (131 - 175 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Cardstock (176 - 220 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Card glossy (176 - 220 g/m) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Color laser transparency	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Labels	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Letterhead	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Envelope	Y	N	N	N	Y
Preprinted	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Prepunched	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Colored	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Rough	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
HP tough paper	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
User types 1 - 5	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

¹ Staples a maximum of 30 pages weighing from 60 g/m² to 220 g/m² (16 lb to 58 lb) except where listed as N (no) or Y (other number).

² Use *only* HP *LaserJet* glossy media. Using HP *Inkjet* glossy media can cause permanent damage to the product.

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the product.

Table 6-9 PCL 6 custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.6 mm (3.8 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	139.7 mm (5.5 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	297.0 mm (11.7 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	432.0 mm (17.0 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)

Table 6-9 PCL 6 custom media sizes (continued)

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 4 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Tray 5	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)
Duplexer	Width	184.0 mm (7.24 inches)	320 mm (12.6 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	457.2 mm (18.0 inches)

Media-type commands

The PCL 5 escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 6-10 Media-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency ¹
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	6	Wd	Light
Esc&	13	Wd	Intermediate
Esc&	6	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	12	Wd	Extra Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock ²
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	7	Wd	Gloss
Esc&	13	Wd	Heavy Gloss
Esc&	19	Wd	Extra Heavy Gloss
Esc&	12	Wd	Tough

Table 6-10 Media-type commands (continued)

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

¹ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

² The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Paper and print media

- [Understand paper and print media use](#)
- [Supported paper and print media sizes](#)
- [Supported paper and print media types](#)
- [Special paper or print media guidelines](#)

Understand paper and print media use

This product supports a variety of paper and other print media in accordance with the guidelines in this user guide. Paper or print media that does not meet these guidelines might cause the following problems:

- Poor print quality
- Increased jams
- Premature wear on the product, requiring repair

For best results, use only HP-brand paper and print media designed for laserjets or multiuse. Do not use paper or print media made for inkjet printers. Hewlett-Packard Company cannot recommend the use of other brands of media because HP cannot control their quality.

It is possible for paper to meet all of the guidelines in this user guide and still not produce satisfactory results. This might be the result of improper handling, unacceptable temperature and/or humidity levels, or other variables over which Hewlett-Packard has no control.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Using paper or print media that does not meet Hewlett-Packard's specifications might cause problems for the product, requiring repair. This repair is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty or service agreements.

Supported paper and print media sizes

 **NOTE:** To obtain best print results, select the appropriate paper size and type in your print driver before printing.

Table 6-11 Supported paper and print media sizes

Size	Dimensions	Feed direction (P = portrait feed [short-edge feed or rotated size]; L = landscape feed [long-edge feed])	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4, 5	Duplexer	Manual duplex
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	P or L	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
Legal	216 x 356 mm	P	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y

Table 6-11 Supported paper and print media sizes (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Feed direction (P = portrait feed [short-edge feed or rotated size]; L = landscape feed [long-edge feed])	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4, 5	Duplexer	Manual duplex
	(8.5 x 14 in)						
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 in)	P	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
Statement	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
8.5 x 13	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
11 x 17	279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	P	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
12 x 18	305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	P or L	Y	N	Y	Y	Y
4 x 6	102 x 152 mm (4 x 6 in)		Y	N	N	N	Y
5 x 8	127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in)		Y	N	N	N	Y
A3	297 x 419 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in)		Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in)	P or L	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
RA3	305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in)	P	Y	N	Y	Y	Y
SRA3	320 x 450 mm (12.6 x 17.7 in)		Y	N	Y	Y	Y
B4 (JIS)	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in)		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
B5 (JIS)	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in)	P	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y

Table 6-11 Supported paper and print media sizes (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Feed direction (P = portrait feed [short-edge feed or rotated size]; L = landscape feed [long-edge feed])	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4, 5	Duplexer	Manual duplex
B6 (JIS)	128 x 182 mm (5.04 x 7.17 in)	P or L	Y	N	N	N	Y
8k	270 x 390 mm (10.63 x 15.35 in)		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
16k	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	P	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

¹ Tray automatically detects paper size.

² Standard sizes within the custom range for Tray 2 are: 8.5 x 13, RA4, SRA4, 8K (270 x 390), 16K (195 x 270)

³ Standard sizes within the custom range for Trays 3, 4, and 5 are: 8.5 x 13, RA4, SRA4, 8K (270 x 390), 16K (195 x 270), RA3, SRA3, and 12 x 18

Table 6-12 Supported envelopes and postcards

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4 & 5	Duplexer	Manual duplex
Double Post Card	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	Y	N	N	N	Y
Envelope #9	98 x 225 mm (3.88 x 8.88 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope #10	105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.49 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope Monarch	98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.7 x 9.8 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope C6	162 x 114 mm (6.4 x 4.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	Y	N	N	N	N
US index cards	102 x 152 mm (4.0 x 6.0 in) and 127 x 203 mm (5.0 x 8.0 in)	Y	N	N	N	N

¹ Weights greater than 160 g/m² may not perform well, but will not harm the product.

The following paper and print media sizes are supported with the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories.

Table 6-13 Supported paper and print media sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories

Size	Dimensions	Stacking ²	Angled staple (left-angled)	Angled staple (right-angled)	Two staples (top or side)	Folding	Saddle stitch
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Letter Rotated	279 x 216 mm (11 x 8.5 in)	Y	Y	Y	N	Y ¹	Y ¹
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Y	Y	Y	N	Y ¹	Y ¹
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
A4 Rotated	297 x 210 mm (11.69 x 8.27 in)	Y	Y	Y	N	Y ¹	Y ¹
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
8.5 x 13	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
A3	297 x 420 mm (11.69 x 16.54 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Statement	140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
11 x 17 (Ledger)	279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹
12 x 18	305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
B4 (JIS)	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹
RA3	305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
SRA3	320 x 450 mm	Y	N	N	N	N	N

Table 6-13 Supported paper and print media sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Stacking ²	Angled staple (left-angled)	Angled staple (right-angled)	Two staples (top or side)	Folding	Saddle stitch
	(12.6 x 17.7 in)						
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182 mm (10.12 x 7.17 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
B6 (JIS)	(128 x 182 mm) (5.04 x 7.2 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
8K	270 x 390 mm (10.63 x 15.35 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
16K	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope 9#	98.4 x 225.4 mm (3.88 x 8.88 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope 10#	104.77 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.02 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope C6	(114 x 162 mm) (4.49 x 6.38 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Envelope Monarch	98.42 x 190.5 mm (3.88 x 7.5 in) ()	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Double Post Card	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
4 x 6 Index Card	102 x 152 mm (4 x 6 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
5 x 8 Index Card	127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in)	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Custom Size	98.55 x 139.70 mm to 320 x 457.2 mm (3.9 x 5.5 to 12.6 x 18 in)	N	N	N	N	N	N

Table 6-13 Supported paper and print media sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Stacking ²	Angled staple (left-angled)	Angled staple (right-angled)	Two staples (top or side)	Folding	Saddle stitch
	(3.9 x 5.5 in to 12.6 x 18 in)						

¹ Booklet maker only² Stacking uses bins 1, 2, and 3 in the stapler/stacker, or bins 1 and 2 in the booklet maker.

Supported paper and print media types

Table 6-14 Tray 1 paper information

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Driver settings	Paper orientation
Paper and cardstock, standard sizes	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in) Equivalent to 100 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond.	Plain or unspecified	Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing down, with the top edge leading into the tray, or toward the back of the product
Envelopes	Less than 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 90 g/m ² (24 lb) bond	Up to 10 envelopes	Envelope	Short edge leading, flap toward the front of the product, facing up
Labels	Maximum 0.23 mm (0.009 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Labels	Side to be printed on facing down
Transparencies	Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Transparencies	Side to be printed on facing down
Heavy	0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing down
Glossy	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing down
Photo media	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)		Side to be printed on facing down
Cut sheet paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)		Side to be printed on facing down
Tough paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)		Side to be printed on facing down

Table 6-15 Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Settings	Paper orientation
Paper and cardstock, standard sizes	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	500 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond.	Plain or unspecified	Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing up, with the top toward the back of the tray or toward the right-hand side of the tray.
Labels	Maximum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Labels	Side to be printed on facing up

Table 6-15 Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information (continued)

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Settings	Paper orientation
Transparencies	Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Transparencies	Side to be printed on facing up
Heavy	0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing up
Glossy	75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing up
Photo media	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing up
Cut sheet paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Plain or unspecified	Side to be printed on facing up
Tough paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	HP Tough Paper	Side to be printed on facing up

Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 capacity: 54 mm (2.126 in) height or 500 sheets of paper, whichever is less. Supported media types include: Cut sheet paper, labels, OHT, glossy paper, glossy film, photo media, and tough paper. Basis Weight: 60-220 g/m² (16-58 lb).

Duplex printing: Provides automatic two-sided printing (printing on both sides of the paper). The paper size range for automatic duplex printing is 175 to 320 mm (7.2 to 12.6 in) x 210 to 457 mm (8.3 to 18 in). The media weight range is 60 to 220 g/m² (16 to 58 lb)

 **NOTE:** HP Color Laser Presentation Paper, Glossy (Q2546A) is not supported with this product. Using this type of paper can cause a fuser jam that might require the replacement of the fuser. Two recommended alternatives are HP Color LaserJet Presentation Paper, Soft Gloss (Q6541A), and HP Color LaserJet Brochure Paper, Glossy (Q6611A, Q6610A).

NOTE: For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this product supports, go to www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies.

Special paper or print media guidelines

This product supports printing on special media. Use the following guidelines to obtain satisfactory results. When using special paper or print media, be sure to set the type and size in your print driver to obtain the best print results.

△ **CAUTION:** HP LaserJet printers use fusers to bond dry toner particles to the paper in very precise dots. HP laser paper is designed to withstand this extreme heat. Using inkjet paper not designed for this technology could damage your printer.

Media type	Do	Do not
Envelopes	- Store envelopes flat. - Use envelopes where the seam extends all the way to the corner of the envelope. - Use peel-off adhesive strips that are approved for use in laser printers.	- Do not use envelopes that are wrinkled, nicked, stuck together, or otherwise damaged. - Do not use envelopes that have clasps, snaps, windows, or coated linings. - Do not use self-stick adhesives or other synthetic materials.

Media type	Do	Do not
Labels	• Use only labels that have no exposed backing between them. • Use Labels that lie flat. • Use only full sheets of labels.	• Do not use labels that have wrinkles or bubbles, or are damaged. • Do not print partial sheets of labels.
Transparencies	• Use only transparencies that are approved for use in laser printers. • Place transparencies on a flat surface after removing them from the product.	• Do not use transparent print media not approved for laser printers.
Letterhead or preprinted forms	• Use only letterhead or forms approved for use in laser printers.	• Do not use raised or metallic letterhead.
Heavy paper	• Use only heavy paper that is approved for use in laser printers and meets the weight specifications for this product.	• Do not use paper that is heavier than the recommended media specification for this product unless it is HP paper that has been approved for use in this product.
Glossy or coated paper	• Use only glossy or coated paper that is approved for use in laser printers.	• Do not use glossy or coated paper designed for use in inkjet products.

HP Device Manager for Linux

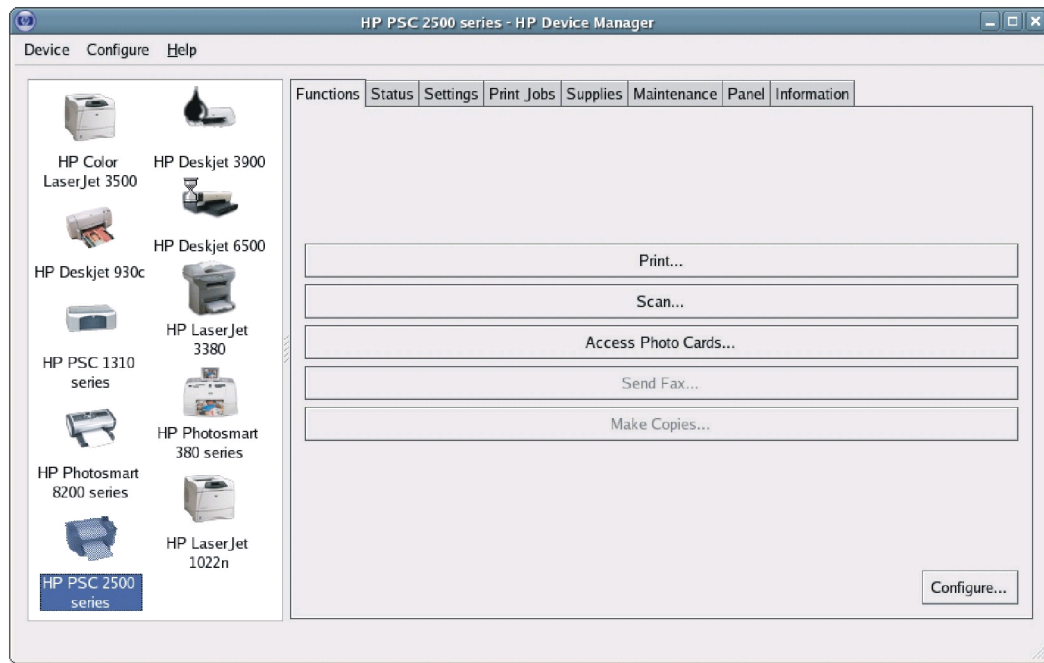
Use the HP Device Manager to gain access to device settings, status, and settings. To download Linux drivers, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

The figures are provided as examples only, and might differ depending on the device.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Functions** tab.

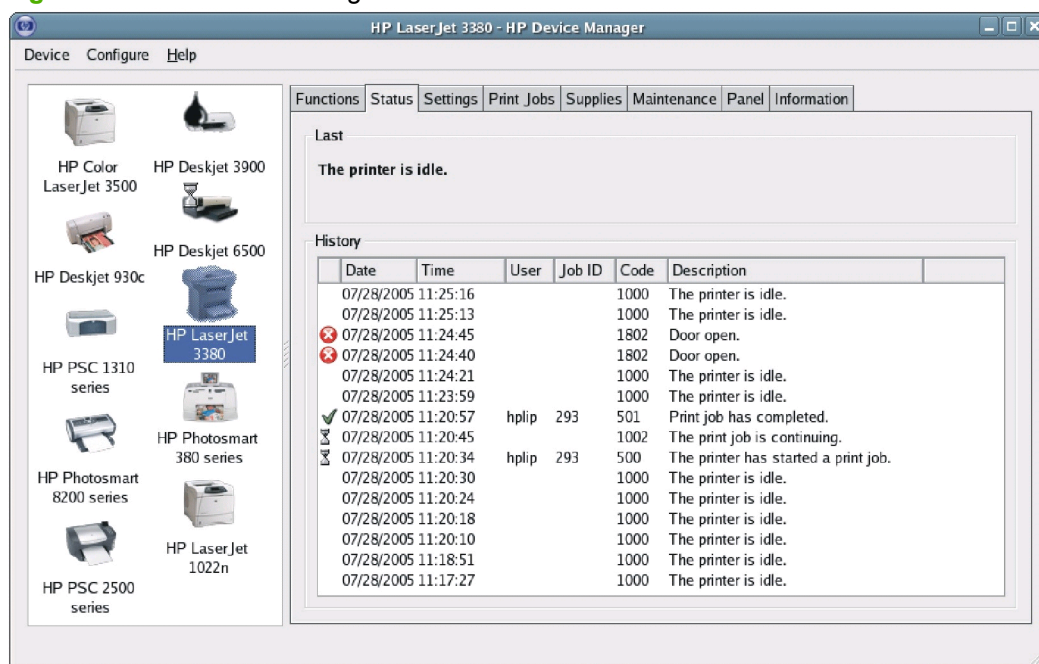
Figure 6-4 HP Device Manager – Functions tab



NOTE: The figure is provided as an example only.

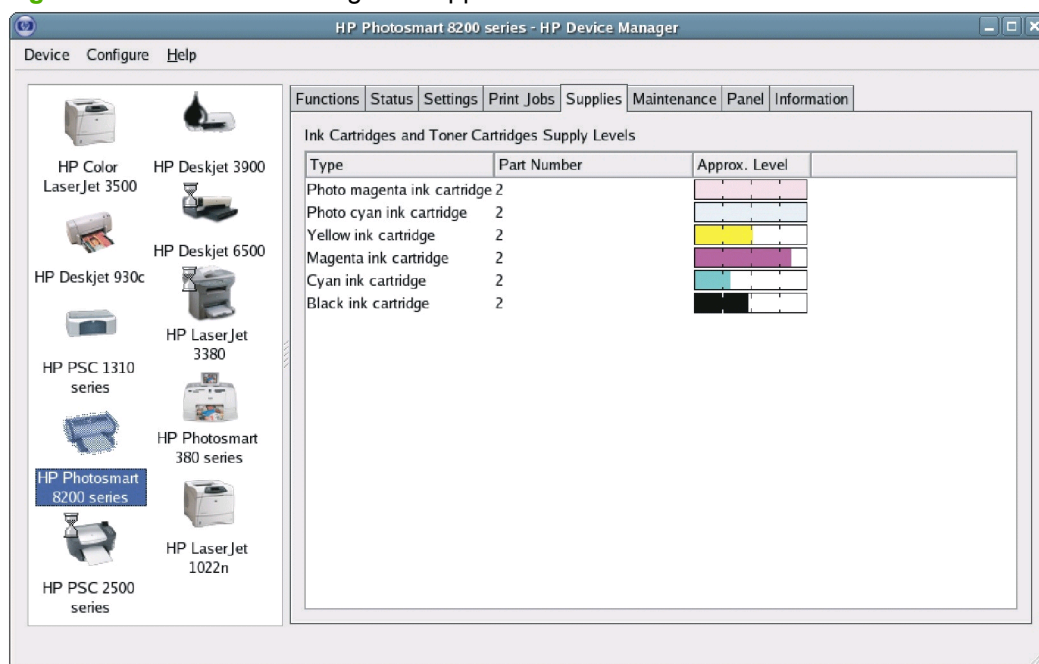
Use the **Status** tab to view device status and job history.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Status** tab:

Figure 6-5 HP Device Manager – Status tab

Use the **Supplies** tab to the status of device consumables that are available.

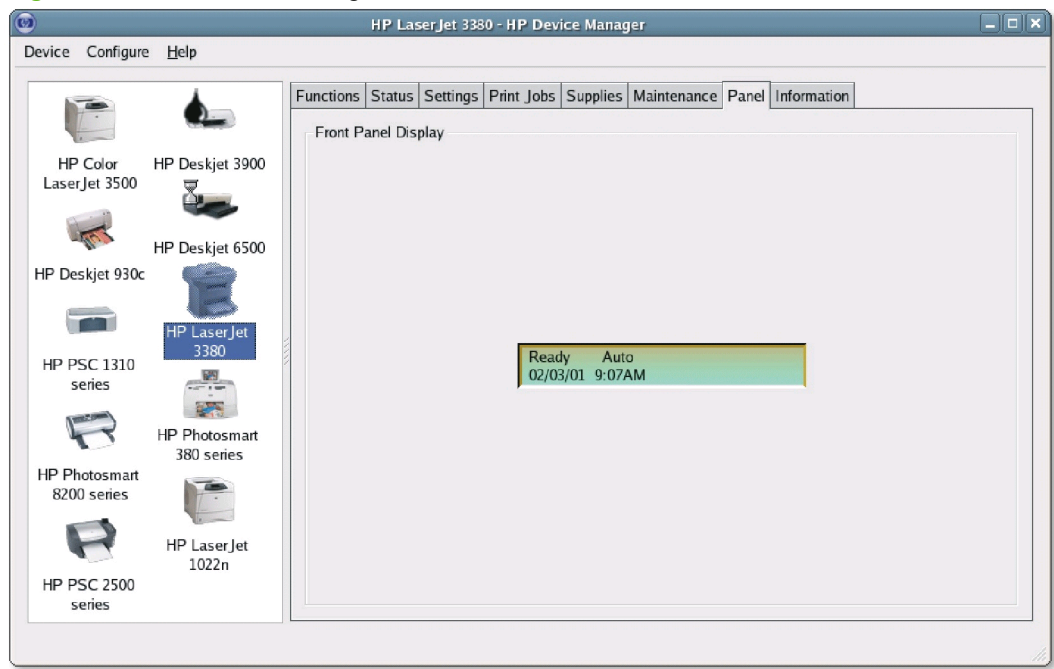
The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Supplies** tab.

Figure 6-6 HP Device Manager – Supplies tab

Use the **Panel** tab to view the message that currently appears on the device control panel.

The following figure shows the HP Device Manager **Panel** tab.

Figure 6-7 HP Device Manager – Panel tab



Glossary

ADF Automatic document feeder. The ADF is used to automatically feed originals into the product for copying, scanning, or faxing.

browser Short for Web browser, a software program that is used to locate and open Web pages.

collate The process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collate is selected, the product prints an entire set before printing additional copies. Otherwise, the product prints the specified number of copies of one page before printing the subsequent pages.

comma (,) A comma in a fax dial sequence indicates that the product will pause at that point in the dialing sequence.

contrast The difference between the dark and light areas of an image. The lower the number value, the more closely the shades resemble each other. The higher the number, the more the shades appear separate from each other.

dedicated line A single telephone line that is used exclusively for either voice calls or fax calls.

distinctive ring A service offered by some telephone companies in some countries/regions that allows two or three phone numbers to be set up on the same telephone line. Each phone number has a different ring pattern, and the fax machine can be configured to recognize the distinctive ring of the fax number.

dots per inch (dpi) A measurement of resolution that is used for printing. Generally, more dots per inch result in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

DSL Digital subscriber line, a technology that enables a high-speed, direct connection to the Internet through telephone lines.

e-mail (electronic mail) An abbreviation for electronic mail. Software that can be used to electronically transmit items over a communications network.

fax An abbreviation of facsimile. The electronic encoding of a printed page and the transmission of the electronic page over a telephone line. The product software can send items to electronic fax programs, which require a modem and fax software.

fax functions Fax-related tasks that are done from the control panel or software that affect only the current job, or are done only once before returning to the Ready state, such as clearing memory. These functions are in their own section in the control-panel menu.

fax settings Fax-related items that, when set or changed, continue to use the choice made until changed again. An example would be the number of times set for the product to redial a busy number. These settings are in their own section of the control panel menu.

file format The way the contents of a file are structured by a program or group of programs.

grayscale Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

halftone An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HP Easy Printer Care HP Easy Printer Care is a program that provides access to the product management and troubleshooting tools, embedded Web server, and product documentation. HP Easy Printer Care does not support Macintosh operating systems.

HP Director A software screen that is used when working with documents. When the document is loaded into the automatic document feeder (ADF) and the computer is connected directly to the product, the HP Director appears on the computer screen to initiate faxing, copying, or scanning.

ISDN Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) is a suite of internationally adopted standards for end-to-end digital communication over the public telephone network.

link A connection to a program or device that can be used to send information from the product software to other programs, such as e-mail, electronic fax, and OCR links.

optical character recognition (OCR) software OCR software converts an electronic image of text, such as a scanned document, into a form that word processor, spreadsheet, and database programs can use.

pixels per inch (ppi) A measurement of resolution that is used for scanning. Generally, more pixels per inch result in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

printer driver A printer driver is a program that software programs use to gain access to a product's features. A printer driver translates a software program's formatting commands (such as page breaks and font selection) into a printer language (such as PostScript or PCL), and then sends the print file to the product.

private branch exchange (PBX) A small telephone switching system that typically is used by large businesses or universities to connect all telephone extensions within the organization. A PBX also connects to the public switched telephone network (PSTN) and may be either manual or dial, depending on the method used by extensions to place incoming or outgoing calls. Normally, the equipment is owned by the customer rather than leased from the telephone company.

public switched telephone network (PSTN) The worldwide dial-up telephone network or a portion of that network. Users are assigned unique phone numbers, which allow them to connect to the PSTN through local telephone exchange companies. Often, this phrase is used when referring to data or other non-telephone services carried over a path initially established using normal telephone signaling and ordinary switched long-distance telephone circuits.

Readiris An optical character recognition (OCR) program that was developed by I.R.I.S. and that is included with the product software.

resolution The sharpness of an image, measured in dots per inch (dpi). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

shared line A single telephone line that is used for both voice and fax calls.

surge protector A device that protects a power supply and communications lines from electrical surges.

TWAIN An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program.

URL Uniform resource locator, the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB Universal serial bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

watermarks A watermark adds background text to a document that is being printed. For example, "Confidential" can be printed in the background text of a document to indicate that the document is confidential. A selection can be made from a set of predefined watermarks, and the font, size, angle, and style can be changed. The product can place the watermark on the first page only or all pages.

WIA Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is available in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

- 3-bin mailbox
 - capacity 6
- 500-sheet trays
 - models including 3

A

- accessibility, documentation 34
- accessories, automatic configuration 48
- Acrobat Reader
 - viewing documentation 27
- ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance 34
- Add Printer installation 89
- Add Printer Wizard, detailed install
 - existing port for a direct connection, using 89
 - print server connection 99
 - TCP/IP port for direction connection, creating 96
- ADF
 - capacity 5
- ADF output bin
 - capacity 6
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
 - viewing documentation 27
- alerts
 - Macintosh 250
- alerts, e-mail 18, 209
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance 34
- autoconfiguration, driver 48
- autoconfiguration, Enterprise
 - about 49
- autorun CD-ROM, Windows 42, 70

B

- Basic Installation
 - choosing 42
- bidirectional communication
 - about 48
 - Enterprise
 - Autoconfiguration 49
- bins
 - capacities 6
 - included 276
 - locating 9
- Bonjour Settings 17, 209
- Bonjour Settings, Macintosh 252
- booklet printing
 - Booklet Layout settings 173
- both sides, printing on
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209

C

- capacity
 - 3-bin mailbox 6
 - ADF 5
 - output bins 6
 - stapler/stacker 6
- cardstock, paper type
 - commands 282
- cartridges, print
 - Macintosh status 258
- CD
 - Administrator
 - Documentation 74
 - Administrator Software 73
 - Install 71
 - Next Steps 76
 - Scan Setup Wizard 75
 - Support 72
 - User Documentation 72
- CD-ROM
 - directory structure,
 - Macintosh 210

- directory structure,
 - Windows 20
- documentation 27, 44
- installer, Windows printing-system software 41, 70
- installing Macintosh printing-system software 212
- languages, Macintosh 210
- languages, Windows 21
- Windows installation 27
- CHM files, viewing 27
- Citrix Terminal Server support 18
- Color
 - Color Options settings 187
 - Color Themes settings 190
 - Custom Profile setting 190
 - Default (sRGB) setting 190
 - features, print drivers 186
 - Neutral Gray settings 189
 - Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) setting 190
 - Photo (sRGB) setting 190
- color
 - change default settings, manually 187
 - Edge Control settings 189
 - fine-tune default settings 187
 - Halftone setting 189
 - restrict use 55
- Color printing
 - ICC profiles 55
 - PANTONE® Matching System colors 55
- Color tab settings 257
- commands, paper
 - size 279
 - source 276
 - type 281
- common installer, features 45

- components, software
 - Macintosh 19, 206
 - Windows 19
- configuration page
 - Macintosh 17
- configurations, models 3
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication
 - support 48
- connectivity features 6
- constraint messages
 - print drivers 141
- continuous export 53
- control panel
 - locating 9
 - settings 40, 206
- copies
 - Quick Copy setting 182
- copying
 - features 7
 - speed specifications 5
- cover pages 255
- covers, locating 9
- Custom Installation
 - choosing 42
- custom paper sizes
 - supported 280
- custom-size paper settings
 - Macintosh 255
- customer support
 - HP Printer Utility pages 17

D

- deleting job-storage jobs 250
- density
 - settings 17
- device status
 - Macintosh Services tab 258
- diagnostics
 - troubleshoot 191
- dialog boxes, printing-system
 - software installation
 - Mac OS X 213
- direct printing
 - FTP, Windows 273
 - LPR 274
 - networks, Windows 274
 - UNIX 274

- directory structure, CD-ROM
 - Macintosh 210
 - Windows 20
- disabling
 - driver features 51
- disk space requirements
 - Macintosh 205
 - Windows 38
- documentation
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - Support Guide 31
 - HP Embedded Web Server User
 - Guide 30
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's
 - Guide 30
 - install notes 28
 - installing (Windows) 128
 - User Guide 33
 - viewing 27, 44
- double-sided printing
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209
- downloading
 - printing-system software 20
- dpi, settings 17
- drivers
 - accessory configuration 48
 - Add Printer installation 89
 - Automatic Configuration
 - setting 199
 - continuous export feature 53
 - custom paper sizes 280
 - diagnostics 54
 - Enterprise
 - Autoconfiguration 49
 - lockable features 51, 248
 - Macintosh 206
 - Macintosh settings 254
 - paper sizes supported 277
 - paper source commands 276
 - paper type commands 281
 - Point and Print
 - installation 105
 - preconfiguration 50
 - preconfiguration support 31
 - presets (Macintosh) 254
 - settings 40, 41, 206, 207
 - supported 14, 39
 - universal 14
 - Update Now 49

- Update Now, bidirectional
 - communication 199
 - version numbers 46
- drivers, install
 - license agreement 83, 107
- drivers, uninstall
 - Add/Remove Programs 131
 - Server Properties 135
- Duplex mode, HP Printer Utility,
 - Macintosh 246
- duplex printing accessory
 - locating 9
- duplexer
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209
- duplexing unit
 - media supported 279
 - testing Macintosh 246
- duty cycle 5

E

- e-mail
 - alerts, Macintosh 250
- e-mail alerts 18, 209
- embedded Web server 15, 57
- Enterprise Autoconfiguration
 - about 49
- envelopes, paper type
 - commands 282
- error messages
 - e-mail alerts 18, 209
- escape sequences
 - paper source 276
 - paper type 281
- Ethernet cards 6
- EWS (Macintosh)
 - documentation 30
 - HP Printer Utility, accessing
 - from 254
- EWS (Windows)
 - documentation 30
- exporting driver parameters 53

F

- fax driver
 - installation 106
- features 3, 5
- File Upload, Macintosh 17, 209, 244
- firmware
 - about updating remotely 260

- determine current level 261
- FTP updates, Windows 265
- LPR command updates 268
- Macintosh updates 245
- messages during update 269
- troubleshooting updates 269
- UNIX updates 267
- verifying installation 271
- Windows network updates 267
- Firmware Update, Macintosh 17, 209
- first page
 - use different paper 255
- fonts
 - included 5
 - install/remove external fonts 195
 - Send True Type as Bitmap, print drivers 146
 - True Type, print drivers 145
 - Upload Macintosh 17, 209
 - Windows 61, 63
- Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) 11
- formatter cover, locating 9
- FTP
 - direct printing, Windows 273
 - Windows firmware updates 265
- Full Installation
 - choosing 42

G

- glossary of terms 293

H

- heavy paper, paper type commands 282
- help
 - print drivers 141
- HP Device Manager for Linux 290
- HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 54
- HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) 80
- HP Driver Preconfiguration 50
- HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 31

- HP Easy Printer Care
 - description 15
 - downloading 15
 - sending a fax 117
 - supported browsers 15
 - supported operating systems 15
- HP Embedded Web Server (Macintosh)
 - documentation 30
 - HP Printer Utility, accessing from 254
- HP Embedded Web Server (Windows)
 - documentation 30
- HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 30
- HP Jetdirect print server
 - models including 3
- HP OpenVMS 18
- HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 137
 - settings 137
- HP Printer Utility 17, 208
- HP Printer Utility, Macintosh
 - about 233
 - accessing 233
 - Bonjour Settings 252
 - Device Information 240
 - Duplex mode 246
 - E-mail Alerts 250
 - Embedded Web Server access 254
 - File Upload 244
 - HP Support 241
 - Lock Resources 248
 - Network Settings 251
 - Supplies Status 237
 - Tray Configuration 247
 - Update Firmware 245
- HP Universal Print Driver 14
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - Driver Preconfiguration Plugin 50, 51
 - firmware updates 268
- HP-UX software 18
- HTML files, viewing 27

I

- ICC color profiles 55

- ICM. See Image Color Management
- Image Color Management
 - color graphics printing 144
- Incompatible Print Settings
 - messages. See constraint messages
- input trays. See trays
- Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 19
- install notes 28
- installation
 - Add Printer 89
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 213
 - fax driver 106
 - HP Driver Installation Utility 80
 - instruction details (Windows) 80
 - Mac OS X V10.2.8 setup 229
 - Mac OS X V10.3 setup 225
 - Mac OS X V10.4 220
 - Macintosh printing-system software 212
 - options 69
 - Point and Print 105
 - system requirements 68
 - system requirements for Macintosh 205
 - system requirements for Windows 38
 - troubleshooting
 - Macintosh 231
 - Windows CD-ROM 27
 - Windows for direct connection 78
 - Windows printing-system software 68
 - Windows software on network 79
- installers
 - common, features 45
 - Windows 41, 70
- Instant Support 241
- interface ports
 - included 6
 - locating 11

J

- jam-access lever, locating 9

- Jetadmin
 - firmware updates 268
- Jetadmin, HP Web 15, 58
- Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 30
- Jetdirect print server
 - models including 3
- Job Aids 8
- job storage
 - deleting jobs 250
 - Macintosh 249
 - Macintosh settings 257
 - releasing jobs 249
- jobs
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209

L

- LAN-connector 6
- languages
 - Macintosh CD-ROMs 210
- languages, printer 5
- Linux operating systems
 - HP Device Manager 290
- Linux software 18
- localized CD-ROMs
 - Macintosh 210
- Lock Resources, Macintosh 17, 209
- lockable features, drivers 51, 248
- LPR commands
 - firmware updates 268
 - printing PDF files 274

M

- Macintosh
 - driver settings 207, 254
 - HP Printer Utility 17, 208
 - removing software 232
 - resize documents 255
 - software 16, 208
 - staple options 257
 - supported operating systems 16, 204
- Macintosh driver settings
 - custom-size paper 255
 - Job Storage 257
 - Services tab 258
 - watermarks 255

- Macintosh operating systems
 - Bonjour Settings 252
 - Device Information 240
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software
 - installation 213
 - direct printing 272
 - directory structure, CD-ROM 210
 - e-mail alerts 250
 - File Upload command 244
 - firmware upgrades 245
 - hardware requirements 205
 - HP Printer Utility 233
 - installing printing-system software 212
 - localized software CDs 210
 - locking driver features 248
 - network settings 251
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.2.8 229
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.3 225
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.4 220
 - software components 206
 - stored jobs 249
 - supplies status 237
 - support 13
 - tray configuration 247
 - troubleshooting setup 231
 - Update Firmware 245
- mailbox, 3-bin
 - capacity 6
- manuals. See documentation
- margins
 - PCL 6 driver 279
- media
 - custom-size, Macintosh settings 255
 - first page 255
 - pages per sheet 255
 - supported sizes 282
- memory
 - features 5
 - included 3, 16, 208
 - installation requirements for Windows operating systems 38
 - Macintosh requirements 205

- messages
 - e-mail alerts 18, 209
- messages, constraint
 - print drivers 141
- MFP Send Fax driver, install
 - Add Printer Wizard 111
 - HP Driver Installation Utility 107
- Microsoft Windows
 - installation options 69
- models 3
- monthly duty cycle 5
- mopy 200
- MS Windows Cluster Server 8
 - support 18
- multiple pages per sheet 255
- multiple-original print. See mopy

N

- n-up printing 255
- networking
 - peer-to-peer, Windows sharing 103
- networks
 - connectivity features 6
 - direct printing 274
 - firmware updates 267
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 50
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 31
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 30
 - Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 19
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209, 251
 - Point and Print installation 105
 - print servers included 3

O

- on/off switch, locating 9
- operating systems
 - availability of software components 19
 - supported 13
- operating systems supported 14, 16, 38, 39, 204
- ordering supplies 43, 72

- output bins
 - capacities 6
 - included 276
 - locating 9
- P**
- pages per minute 5
- pages per sheet 255
- paper
 - Alternative Letterhead
 - Mode 146
 - custom sizes 280
 - custom-size, Macintosh
 - settings 255
 - duplex binding settings, print
 - drivers 173
 - first page 255
 - margins 279
 - orientation 176
 - pages per sheet 255
 - settings, print drivers 155
 - size commands 279
 - sizes supported 277
 - source commands 276
 - sources and destinations 276
 - supported sizes 282
 - type 287
 - type commands 281
 - types supported 279
- parallel port
 - locating 11
- PCL drivers
 - custom paper sizes 280
 - diagnostics 54
 - paper sizes supported 277
 - paper source commands 276
 - paper type commands 281
 - universal print driver 14
 - Update Now 49
 - version numbers 46
- PCL traditional drivers
 - margins 279
 - paper size commands 279
- PCL unidrivers
 - paper size commands 279
- PDF files
 - LPR commands, printing 274
 - Macintosh, File Upload
 - command 244
 - viewing 27
- peer-to-peer networking
 - about (Windows) 103
 - client with Windows XP 105
 - host with Windows 2000 104
 - host with Windows XP 104
- perr-to-peer networking
 - client with Windows 2000 104
- PIN
 - Personal Job setting 181
 - PIN to print setting 183
- Point and Print installation,
 - Windows printing-system
 - software 105
- ports
 - included 6
 - locating 11
- PostScript Printer Description
 - (PPD) files
 - included 16, 208
- power switch, locating 9
- PPDs
 - included 16, 208
- PPDs, Macintosh
 - troubleshooting 231
- preconfiguration, driver 31, 50
- presets (Macintosh) 254
- print cartridges
 - Macintosh status 258
- print drivers
 - About tab contents 201
 - access 139
 - accessory output bins, Device
 - Settings tab 200
 - Advanced Printing Features
 - settings, print drivers 145
 - Advanced tab content 143
 - Allow Manual Duplexing setting,
 - Device Settings tab 199
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode,
 - Advanced tab 146
 - Automatic Configuration setting,
 - Device Settings tab 199
 - Automatic settings, Color
 - tab 187
 - Booklet Layout settings,
 - Finishing tab 173
 - collation settings 201
 - Color Options settings, Color
 - tab 187
 - Color tab contents 186
 - Color Themes settings, Color
 - tab 190
 - Copy Count settings, Advanced
 - tab 144
 - device services, Services
 - tab 193
 - Device Settings tab
 - content 194
 - Document Options setting,
 - Advanced tab 145
 - Document Options settings,
 - Finishing tab 170
 - document preview image 161,
 - 165, 176, 178, 191
 - duplex unit, Device Settings
 - tab 199
 - Effects tab content 163
 - Envelopes setting, Printing
 - Shortcuts tab 152
 - Factory Defaults setting, Printing
 - Shortcuts tab 152
 - Finishing tab contents 170
 - Flip Pages Up setting, Finishing
 - tab 173
 - Font Substitution Table settings,
 - Device Settings tab 195
 - Form to Tray Assignment
 - setting, Device Settings
 - tab 194
 - General Everyday Printing
 - setting, Printing Shortcuts
 - tab 148
 - General settings, Color
 - tab 189
 - Graphic setting, Advanced
 - tab 144
 - Halftone setting, Color
 - tab 189
 - Help system 141
 - ICM options, Advanced
 - tab 144
 - incompatible print settings
 - messages 141
 - installable options, Device
 - Settings tab 198
 - Internet Services options,
 - Services tab 192
 - Job name settings, Job Storage
 - tab 184

- job notification options, Job Storage tab 183
- Job Separator setting, Device Settings tab 200
- Job separator Settings, Finishing tab 176
- Job Storage Mode settings, Job Storage tab 181
- job storage settings, Job Storage tab 184
- Job Storage tab contents 179
- Layout Options setting, Advanced tab 146
- Manual settings, Color tab 187
- mopier mode, Device Settings tab 200
- Neutral Grayscale settings, Color tab 189
- Orientation settings, Finishing tab 176
- Output Bin settings, Output tab 178
- Output Options settings, Output tab 177
- Output tab contents 177
- Page Order settings, Finishing tab 175
- Pages per Sheet setting, Finishing tab 174, 175
- Paper Options settings, Paper/Quality tab 155
- Paper source setting, Paper/Quality tab 158
- Paper type setting, Paper/Quality tab 158
- Paper/Output settings, Advanced tab 143
- Paper/Quality tab contents 154
- Personal Job setting, Job Storage tab 181
- PIN to print setting, Job Storage tab 183
- Print All Text as Black setting, Advanced tab 146
- Print on Both Sides settings, Finishing tab 171
- Print Optimizations setting, Advanced tab 145

- Print Quality settings, Paper/Quality tab 162
- Printer Features setting, Advanced tab 146
- printer hard disk, Device Settings tab 200
- Printing Preferences tab, driver access 139
- Printing Shortcuts tab contents 147
- Proof and Hold setting, Job Storage tab 181
- Properties tab, driver access 140
- Quick Copy setting, Job Storage tab 182
- Raster Compression feature, Advanced tab 146
- Resizing Options settings, Effects tab 163
- Send True Type as Bitmap setting, Advanced tab 146
- Services tab content 191
- status message, Job Storage tab 180
- Stored Job setting, Job Storage tab 182
- tray 3, Device Settings tab 199
- trays 4 and 5, Device Settings tab 199
- True Type font settings, Advanced tab 145
- Two-sided (Duplex) Printing setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 151
- user name settings, Job Storage tab 183
- Watermarks settings, Effects tab 165
- What's this? Help 141
- print job
 - delete stored job 185
 - hard disk, job storage 200
 - Job Name settings 184
 - job separator 200
 - job storage 200
 - Personal Job setting 181
 - Proof and Hold setting 181
 - Quick Copy setting 182

- release stored job 185
- Stored Job setting 182
- user name 183
- print media
 - supported sizes 282
- print paper
 - types 287
- printer driver. *See* printer driver
 - See also* fax driver
- printer drivers
 - supported 39
- printer languages 5
- printing
 - speed specifications 5
 - stored jobs 249
 - User Guide 34
- printing-system software, install
 - license agreement 83, 107
- printing-system software, uninstall
 - Add/Remove Programs 131
 - Server Properties 135
- priority, settings 40, 206
- problem-solving
 - e-mail alerts 18, 209
- processor speed 5
- PS Emulation driver
 - custom paper sizes 280
 - diagnostics 54
 - paper sizes supported 277
 - paper source commands 276
 - Update Now 49
 - version number 46
- PS Emulation drivers 14
- PS emulation fonts 63

Q

- Quick Reference Job Aids 8

R

- regional versions, CD-ROMs
 - Macintosh 210
- releasing job-storage jobs 249
- remote firmware updates
 - about 260
 - determine current firmware level 261
 - FTP, Windows 265
 - LPR commands 268
 - Macintosh 245
 - messages 269

- troubleshooting 269
- UNIX 267
- verifying installation 271
- Windows network 267
- removing Macintosh
 - software 232
- resize documents
 - Macintosh 255
- resolution
 - settings 17
 - specifications 5
- Resolution Enhancement
 - technology (REt) 17
- REt (Resolution Enhancement
 - technology) 17

S

- SAP printing 18
- scale documents
 - Macintosh 255
- Scan Setup Wizard
 - create network folder 118
- scanning
 - speed specifications 5
- screen-readable
 - documentation 34
- security features 7
- send fax driver
 - installation 106
- serial number
 - locate 11
- Services tab
 - Macintosh 258
- settings
 - continuous export 53
 - driver presets
 - (Macintosh) 254
 - drivers 41, 207
 - locking 51
 - priority 40, 206
- sizes, paper
 - commands 279
 - custom 280
 - margins 279
 - supported 277
- software
 - embedded Web server 15, 57
 - HP Easy Printer Care 15
 - HP Printer Utility 17, 208

- HP Web Jetadmin 15, 58
- Macintosh 16, 208
- option install (Windows) 128
- settings 40, 206
- supported operating
 - systems 14, 16, 38, 204
- uninstalling 130
- uninstalling Macintosh 232
- Windows 14, 38
- software license agreement 83, 107
- software, uninstall
 - component list 130
- Solaris software 18
- sources, paper. *See* trays
- special media
 - guidelines 288
- special paper
 - guidelines 288
- specifications
 - features 5
- speed specifications 5
- standard output bin
 - capacity 6
 - locating 9
- staple options
 - Macintosh 257
- stapler/stacker
 - capacity 6
- status
 - HP Printer Utility,
 - Macintosh 17, 208
 - Macintosh services tab 258
 - supplies, Macintosh 237
- storage, job
 - deleting jobs 250
 - Macintosh 249
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209, 257
 - releasing jobs 249
- supplies
 - Macintosh status 237
 - ordering 43, 72
 - status, viewing with HP Printer
 - Utility 17, 208
- supply-status, Services tab
 - Macintosh 258
- support
 - HP Printer Utility pages 17

- Support tab, HP Printer
 - Utility 241
- supported media 282
- Supported operating systems
 - availability of software
 - components 19
- supported utilities
 - for Macintosh 18
- system requirements
 - Windows 38

T

- TCP/IP port creation 96
- terminology 293
- toner
 - density setting 17
- top cover
 - locating 9
- transparencies, paper type
 - commands 282
- tray 1
 - locating 9
- trays
 - Alternative Letterhead
 - Mode 146
 - autoconfiguration 48
 - custom paper sizes 280
 - double-sided printing 256
 - duplex unit 199
 - included 3, 276
 - Macintosh configuration 247
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209
 - media supported 279
 - paper source commands 276
 - paper type commands 281
 - specify paper size 194
 - tray 3 199
 - trays 4 and 5 199
- troubleshoot
 - diagnostics 191
- troubleshooting
 - duplexing unit, Macintosh 246
 - firmware upgrades 269
 - HP driver Diagnostic Printer
 - Check Tool 54
 - Macintosh setup 231
- Tru64 UNIX printing 18
- TrueType fonts included 5
- two-sided printing
 - Macintosh settings 17, 209

- typefaces
 - included 5
- types, paper
 - supported 279
- U**
- unidrivers
 - paper size commands 279
- uninstallation
 - documentation
 - (Windows) 136
 - optional software
 - (Windows) 136
 - Windows software 130
- uninstalling Macintosh
 - software 232
- universal print driver 14
- UNIX operating systems
 - direct printing 274
 - print-ready printing 274
 - remote firmware update 267
- UNIX software 18
- Update Now feature 49
- updating firmware remotely. *See*
 - remote firmware updates
- User Guide 33

- V**
- version numbers, drivers 46

- W**
- watermarks 255
- Web Jetadmin
 - firmware updates 268
- Web sites
 - Citrix Terminal server
 - support 18
 - downloading software 20
 - HP Driver Diagnostic Printer
 - Check Tool 54
 - HP OpenVMS 18
 - Internet Services options,
 - Services tab 192
 - SAP printing 18
 - support links 43, 72
 - Tru64 UNIX printing 18
 - universal print driver 14
- Windows
 - driver settings 41
 - drivers supported 14
 - installation options 69

- supported operating
 - systems 14, 38
- system requirements 38
- universal print driver 14
- Windows installation CD 27
- Windows operating systems
 - Add Printer installation 89
 - CD-ROM, print system 41, 70
 - direct printing 272
 - direct printing, networks 274
 - directory structure, CD-ROM 20
 - documentation 27
 - driver versions 46
 - fonts supported 61
 - installation details 80
 - installation overview 70
 - installing printing-system 68
 - LPR commands 274
 - Point and Print
 - installation 105
 - PS emulation fonts
 - supported 63
 - support 13
 - supported 68
 - system requirements 68
- Windows OS
 - HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 137

© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com

